

Contents

Introduction to <i>Solutions Third Edition</i>	3
Unit 1	Introduction
Unit 1	Family and friends
Unit 2	School days
Unit 3	Style
Unit 4	Food
Unit 5	In the city
Unit 6	Going wild
Unit 7	Digital world
Unit 8	Be active!
Unit 9	Home sweet home!
Culture Bank	54
Workbook answer keys and transcripts	59

Third Edition Solutions

Elementary

Essentials Teacher's Book

Christina de la Mare

Tim Falla Paul A Davies

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, ox2 6DP, United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship,
and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade
mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2017

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

First published in 2017

2021 2020 2019 2018 2017

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored
in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without
the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly
permitted by law, by licence or under terms agreed with the appropriate
reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside
the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford
University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this work in any other form and you must impose
this same condition on any acquirer

Links to third party websites are provided by Oxford in good faith and for
information only. Oxford disclaims any responsibility for the materials
contained in any third party website referenced in this work

ISBN: 978 0 19 456193 8 Book

ISBN: 978 0 19 456195 2 Workbook Audio CD

ISBN: 978 0 19 456196 9 Teacher's Resource Disk

ISBN: 978 0 19 456201 0 Pack

Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Back cover photograph: Oxford University Press building/David Fisher

Introduction to *Solutions Third Edition*

A note from the authors

Welcome to *Solutions Third Edition*. Teachers' responses to *Solutions* and *Solutions Second Edition* have been overwhelmingly positive. *Solutions Third Edition* has evolved, based on teacher feedback, whilst retaining the key features that teachers value in the *Solutions* series:

- engaging topics and texts
- a strong focus on exam topics and tasks
- a clear structure, with easy-to-follow lessons that always have an achievable outcome
- a familiar teaching and learning approach with plenty of extra practice material
- a guided and supported approach to speaking and writing

In the course of extensive research carried out for the new edition, we spoke to scores of teachers and asked them how we could improve the course.

In response to their requests, we have:

- provided 100% new content
- included a Listening lesson in every unit which will develop your students' listening skills
- included a Word Skills lesson in every unit which explores the grammar of key vocabulary and includes dictionary-based exercises
- addressed mixed ability, with extra support for all levels and suggested extension activities in the Teacher's Guide
- increased the amount of language recycling and included a *Recycle!* activity to consolidate grammar students have studied earlier in the course
- provided added flexibility with a bank of Culture lessons with supporting DVD documentary clips at the back of the Student's Book and extra activities on the Classroom Presentation Tool

Solutions Third Edition has benefited from collaboration with teachers with extensive experience of teaching and preparing students for exams. We would like to thank Helen Halliwell for sharing her expertise in writing the procedural notes in the Teacher's Guide.

We are confident that the result is a forward-thinking and modern course that will prepare your students for the future and provide you with all the support that you need. We hope that you and your students enjoy using it!

Tim Falla and Paul A Davies

The components of the course

- Student's Book
- Workbook with audio available online
- Student's Book and Workbook e-Books
- Teacher's Pack
 - Essentials Teacher's Book: answer keys and audio scripts for both the Student's Book and the Workbook
 - Teacher's Resource Disk: full teaching notes, photocopiable worksheets, DVD worksheets, Twenty-first century skills projects, Course Test audio
 - Workbook Audio
- Class Audio CDs
- Course Tests
- Course DVD
- Classroom Presentation Tool
- Student's and Teacher's Websites (www.oup.com/elt/teacher/solutions)

Solutions Third Edition – new features

New for the Student's Book

- New *Listening* lesson – with a focus on sub-skills to develop students' listening skills. Lessons include strategies, exam-like practice and speaking activities.
- New *Word Skills* lesson – students learn the grammar of key vocabulary in context, including word building and phrasal verbs. Students also develop their dictionary skills.
- New *Culture Bank* – nine Culture lessons linked to the topic and language of the main units. These ready-to-use lessons can be used at any point in the course, giving teachers the flexibility to choose when to use them.

New for the Workbook

- More listening practice.
- Five *Exam Skills Trainers* providing further practice of typical exam tasks.
- Nine *Unit Reviews* to encourage students to reflect on their progress.
- Five *Cumulative Reviews* for Units I-1, I-3, I-5, I-7 and I-9.

New for the Classroom Presentation Tool

- Optional lesson openers – additional lead-in activities to motivate students and recycle language.
- Optional lesson closers – quiz-style round-up activities to consolidate what students have learned in the lesson.
- Optional task support – for example, useful language or extra ideas to help students complete classroom tasks.

Map of resources

IA Vocabulary

Student's Book, page 4; Workbook, page 4

IB Grammar

Student's Book, page 5; Workbook, page 5

IC Vocabulary

Student's Book, page 6; Workbook, page 6

Photocopiable: Vocabulary Review

ID Grammar

Student's Book, page 7; Workbook, page 7

Photocopiable: Grammar Review

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit I

End of unit

Short Tests: Unit I

IA Vocabulary

Personal information

Exercise 2 1.02 [page 4](#)

1 your name 2 do you spell 3 are you from 4 old are you

Exercise 3 1.03 [page 4](#)

They share the /eɪ/ sound.

Exercise 4 [page 4](#)

1 b, c, d, e, g, p, t, v 2 f, l, m, n, s, x, z

Exercise 6 1.04 [page 4](#)

For further practice of numbers and ordinals:

Vocabulary Builder IA [page 117](#)

- 3 1 second June 2 twenty-second November
- 3 fifth August 4 twelfth February 5 twenty-first April
- 6 nineteenth October 7 third January
- 8 twenty-third July 9 sixth December

Exercise 7 1.05 [page 4](#)

1 Antoine, eighteen 2 Eszter, eighteen
3 Martyna, seventeen 4 Alejandro, sixteen

Transcript

1 Eszter Hi! I'm Eszter. Nice to meet you.

Antoine Nice to meet you too. I'm Antoine.

E How do you spell that?

A A-N-T-O-I-N-E.

E Oh, OK. Eszter is E-S-Z-T-E-R.

A And where are you from, Eszter?

E I'm from Hungary. What about you? Where are you from?

A I'm from France.

E How old are you?

A I'm eighteen.

E Me too!

2 Alejandro Hello. I'm Alejandro.

Martyna Hi! I'm Martyna. Nice to meet you.

A Nice to meet you too. How do you spell Martyna?

M With a 'Y': M-A-R-T-Y-N-A.

A Oh, right. I'm Alejandro with a 'J': A-L-E-J-A-N-D-R-O.

M Where are you from?

A I'm from Spain. What about you?

M I'm from Poland.

A Oh, OK. How old are you, Martyna?

M I'm seventeen. How old are you?

A I'm sixteen.

Exercise 8 1.05 [page 4](#)

Antoine France Eszter Hungary

Martyna Poland Alejandro Spain

Transcript

See exercise 7.

Exercise 10 [page 4](#)

1 Croatia, the Czech Republic, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Italy, Poland, Russia, Slovakia, Spain, Turkey, the UK, Ukraine 2 China, India, Japan, Russia, Turkey 3 Argentina, Brazil, Canada, Mexico, the USA 4 Australia, Canada, the UK, the USA 5 Students' own answers.

IB Grammar

be and have got

Exercise 1 1.06 [page 5](#)

Joanna's sister Emma is sixteen.

Exercise 2 [page 5](#)

Here's a photo of us. I'm on the right. Are you twins? Yes, we are, but we aren't identical. Is that your dog ... ? Yes, it is. She's called Rosie. Rosie is Emma's dog, really. How old is she? She's sixteen That's very old No, Emma's sixteen. Rosie is six.

1 'm 2 's 3 aren't 4 is 5 are 6 is 7 are

Exercise 3 [page 5](#)

2 My teacher is / isn't very tall. 3 I'm / I'm not 16 years old.
4 My friends are / aren't all girls. 5 It's / It isn't very cold today. 6 My friends and I are / aren't in an English lesson.

Exercise 4 [page 5](#)

1 Are 2 Is 3 Are 4 Are 5 Are 6 Am

For further practice of be:

Grammar Builder IB [page 122](#)

1 1 is / 's 2 am / 'm 3 am / 'm 4 is 5 am / 'm 6 is 7 are

2 1 I'm not from the USA. 2 My teacher isn't British.
3 I'm not at home. 4 You aren't sixteen years old.
5 It isn't cold today. 6 My friends and I aren't in a maths lesson.

3 1 Are we in school? d 2 Is it very hot today? b
3 Are you from China? f 4 Are your parents teachers? c 5 Is Stella eighteen years old? e 6 Is Sam in his bedroom? a

Exercise 5 page 5

1 've / have 2 's / has 3 hasn't / has not 4 Have
5 haven't / have not

Exercise 6 page 5

1 've got / haven't got 2 've got / haven't got 3 's got /
hasn't got 4 've got / haven't got 5 have got / haven't got

Exercise 7 1.07 page 5

Joe a pet, a skateboard, a smartphone, a watch

Amy a bike, a laptop, a watch

Transcript

Amy Hi, Joe. Have you got a pet?
Joe Yes, I have. I've got a dog. His name is Ricky.
A Ricky? That's a nice name.
J What about you, Amy? Have you got a pet?
A No, I haven't. Is that your skateboard? It's really nice.
J Thanks.
A I haven't got a skateboard. But I've got a bike.
J I haven't got a bike.
A That's a nice smartphone.
J Thanks. It's new – a birthday present from my parents.
Have you got a smartphone too?
A No, I haven't. My phone is really old! It isn't a smartphone.
J My computer is really old.
A Is it a laptop?
J No, it isn't. Have you got a laptop?
A Yes, I have. Oh, what's the time? Have you got a watch?
J Yes, I have. It's 12.30. Where's your watch?
A I'm not sure. Oh, it's here – in my bag. Come on. It's maths now with Mr Brown. We're late!

Exercise 8 page 5

Joe's got a pet. **He**'s got a skateboard. He hasn't got a bike. **He**'s got a smartphone. He hasn't got a laptop. **He**'s got a watch.
Amy hasn't got a pet. She hasn't got a skateboard. She's got a bike. She hasn't got a smartphone. She's got a laptop. She's got a watch.

For further practice of have got:

Grammar Builder IB page 122

- 4 1 have got 2 hasn't got 3 haven't got 4 has got 5 have got 6 haven't got
5 2 I've got a laptop./I haven't got a laptop. 3 I've got a pet./I haven't got a pet. 4 I've got a smartphone./I haven't got a smartphone. 5 I've got a TV in my bedroom./I haven't got a TV in my bedroom. 6 I've got an English dictionary./I haven't got an English dictionary.

IC Speaking**Talking about ability and asking for permission****Exercise 1** 1.08 page 6

Alfie She can play the guitar really well. Her voice isn't bad.
Rose She isn't very good. She can't sing.

Exercise 2 page 6

Affirmative She can play the guitar really well. But I can play the piano. **Negative** She can't sing. I can't hear the words. No, I can't. I can't find my money. **Interrogative** Can you play the guitar like that? Can I borrow £1, please?

Exercise 3 page 6

1 can 2 can't 3 can't 4 can 5 can't

For further practice of can:

Grammar Builder IC page 122

- 7 2 They can't speak French. 3 We can swim.
4 Ben and Sam can ski. 5 You can't play the piano.
6 My friend can play tennis.

Exercise 5 page 6

guitar, piano

Exercise 6 1.09 page 6

2 keyboard 3 guitar 4 trumpet 5 flute 6 drums
7 violin

Transcript

See answer key.

For further practice of numbers and ordinals:

Vocabulary Builder IC page 117

- 4 A saxophone B trombone C drums D keyboard
E violin F trumpet G flute H piano
5 1 base guitar, drums, guitar / electric guitar
2 cello, clarinet, drums, flute, oboe, piano, trumpet,
trombone, violin

Exercise 7 page 6

1 swim 2 ride a horse 3 dance 4 play basketball

ID Grammar**Articles: the, a / an, some; this / that / these / those****Exercise 1** page 7

Left to right, top row eraser, cupboard, pencil case, ruler
Left to right, bottom row pencil sharpener, shelf, exercise book, bin

Exercise 2 1.10 page 7
Olivia's pencil case is at home.**Exercise 3** page 7

Have you got a pencil and an eraser? I've got a pencil, but I haven't got an eraser. The pencil is on my desk. Have you got a coloured pen? No, but I've got some coloured pencils.

For further practice of articles the, a / an, some:

Grammar Builder ID page 122

- 9 1 a 2 an 3 some 4 some 5 an 6 some
7 an 8 a 9 a 10 some
10 1 a, a, the, the 2 some, a, The, The 3 an, some,
The, the 4 some, an, The, the

Exercise 5 page 7

1 an 2 some 3 an 4 some 5 an 6 some
7 some 8 some 9 a 10 some 11 a 12 a

Exercise 6 page 7

1 a, a, The, The 2 some, The, the, the 3 an, a, The, the
4 some, some, the 5 a, a, some, The, the

Exercise 7 page 7

Is that your pencil case?

For further practice of *this / that / these / those*:

Grammar Builder ID page 122

11 1 those 2 This 3 this 4 That 5 Those 6 These

Map of resources

1A Vocabulary

Student's Book, pages 8–9; Workbook, page 8

Photocopiable: 1A (Family)

1B Grammar

Student's Book, page 10; Workbook, page 9

Photocopiable: 1B (Present simple (affirmative))

1C Listening

Student's Book, page 11; Workbook, page 10

1D Grammar

Student's Book, page 12; Workbook, page 11

Photocopiable: 1D (Present simple (negative and interrogative))

1E Word Skills

Student's Book, page 13; Workbook, page 12

1F Reading

Student's Book, pages 14–15; Workbook, page 13

1G Speaking

Student's Book, page 16; Workbook, page 14

Photocopiable: Functional Language Practice: Describing people

1H Writing

Student's Book, page 17; Workbook, page 15

Culture 1

Student's Book, page 108

DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 1

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 1

End of unit

Unit Review: Workbook, pages 16–17

Photocopiable: Grammar Review

Exam Skills Trainer 1: Workbook, pages 18–19

Cumulative Review 1 (Units 1–1): Workbook, pages 108–109

Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 1

For further practice of possessive 's:

Grammar Builder 1A

page 124

- 1 1 dad's cat 2 Jack's sister 3 teacher's bike 4 parents' boat 5 grandparents' flat

Exercise 3



1.12

page 9

- 2 's father 3 's parents 4 's nephew
5 's grandmother / grandma 6 's aunts
7 's grandchildren

Transcript

- 1 Harry is Tom's son.
2 Martin is Tom's father.
3 Nathan and Rosie are Sophie's parents.
4 Harry is Liz's nephew.
5 Lisa is Mia's grandmother.
6 Clare and Liz are Jessica's aunts.
7 Poppy, Harry and Mia are Rosie's grandchildren.

Exercise 4



page 9

(Possible answers)

Nathan is Rosie's husband.

Clare is Tom's wife.

Martin is Harry's grandfather / grandad.

Poppy, Harry and Mia are Jessica's cousins.

Jessica is Sophie's daughter.

Mia and Poppy are Mike's nieces.

Liz is Harry's aunt.

Harry is Sophie's nephew.

Exercise 5



1.13

page 9

c brother-in-law

Transcript

Sam Can I see that photo?

Ella Yes, of course. Here you are.

S Are those your grandparents?

E Well, that's my grandad, yes. But that's not my grandma. It's my grandad's sister. She hasn't got children.

S And that's your sister, isn't it? That's Maria – on the left.

E Yes, it is. And that's her husband.

S What's his name?

E Bruno. And these are their two children.

S How old are they?

E Er ... six and four.

S So, you've got one niece and one nephew.

E No. I've got two nieces and two nephews.

S Really?

E Yes. I've got a brother too, remember? And he's got two children.

S Oh, yes. And what about you? Where are you?

E I'm not in the photo. It's my camera!

Exercise 6



page 9

- 1 Has, got 2 Has, got 3 Has, got 4 Have, got

- 5 Has, got 6 Have, got

1A Vocabulary

Exercise 1



1.11

page 8

- a female aunt, daughter, granddaughter, grandmother (grandma), mother (mum), niece, sister, wife
b male brother, father (dad), grandfather (grandad), grandson, husband, nephew, son, uncle
c male or female child / children, cousin, grandchild / grandchildren, grandparent, parent

Transcript

See answer key.

Exercise 7 1.13 page 9

1 Yes, he has. 2 No, she hasn't. 3 Yes, she has. 4 Yes, they have. 5 No, she hasn't. 6 Yes, they have.

Transcript

See exercise 5.

Exercise 8 page 9

- 1 a cousin b husband (correct answer) c brother
2 father, c
3 a niece b daughter (correct answer) c husband
4 a son b nephew c grandson (correct answer)

1B Grammar

Present simple (affirmative)

Exercise 2 page 10

- 1 Leonard, Sheldon, Howard and Raj
2 Leonard and Sheldon
3 Students' own answers

Exercise 3 page 10

- 1 works 2 work

Exercise 4 page 10

is a TV comedy are scientists They work together they share a flat often visit them Penny lives opposite She works in a restaurant She likes Leonard and Sheldon they are very different comes from this contrast It's a simple idea watch and enjoy people love shows

Some of the verbs end in -s because the subject of the sentence is the third person singular.

Exercise 5 page 10

- 1 watch 2 lives 3 work 4 visit 5 like

Exercise 6 page 10

- 1 loves 2 works 3 studies 4 likes 5 goes
6 meets 7 go 8 shares 9 works 10 watches
11 has

For further practice of the present simple (affirmative): Grammar Builder 1B page 124

- 2 2 I love comedy shows.
3 My best friend lives with his grandparents.
4 My dad teaches English.
5 We listen to music at home.
6 My sister goes to school by bus.
7 I enjoy school.
8 My dad studies ancient languages.
3 2 Tom and Ann play tennis in the garden.
3 Connor meets (his) friends after school.
4 Liam and Evie visit (their) relatives every weekend.
5 Rachel has a shower every evening.
6 Daniel skateboards in the park.

Exercise 7 1.14 page 10

Exercise 8 1.15 page 10

- A comes, goes, likes, lives, shares
B dances, teaches, watches

1C Listening

Spelling and pronunciation

Exercise 2 page 11

- 1 Noel is a baker. 2 21 (seventeen children and two parents)

Exercise 4 page 11

All except: tidy my bedroom, wash the dishes

Exercise 5 1.16 page 11

- 1 c 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 d 6 a

Exercise 6 1.17 page 11

- 1 men 2 cup 3 far 4 wait 5 leave 6 March

Exercise 7 1.18 page 11

- 1 men 2 cup 3 far 4 wet 5 leave 6 match

Transcript

- 1 Look at those men in the supermarket!
2 Is that your cup? Have some more coffee!
3 Where's the bakery? Is it far from here?
4 I can't go to bed now. My hair is wet.
5 Do you leave home before eight in the morning?
6 Let's watch the match on TV. I love football.

Exercise 8 1.19 page 11

- 1 F – He thinks his bedroom is untidy. 2 F – Her sister Clare tidies the bedroom. 3 T 4 T 5 T 6 F – Her brother has got exams at the moment.

Transcript

Ryan My parents are a bit angry with me.

Joanna Oh, why?

R My bedroom is untidy – they say!

J Is it untidy?

R Yes, I suppose so. But I can't tidy it every day! It's so unfair. J I share a bedroom with my sister, Clare. She's a really tidy person. She tidies our bedroom.

R Really? Lucky you! I tidy my bedroom every weekend. But I'm really busy on schooldays.

J Oh, dear. That is a bit unfair.

R Yes, I do a lot of housework! I help my mum with the cooking, for example. What about you?

J We share the housework in our family. My dad cooks dinner. My mum does the washing and cleans the house. I unload the dishwasher and I do the ironing, too.

R What about your brother?

J He's got exams at the moment so he sits in his bedroom and does homework. Normally, he sets the table and he goes to the supermarket too, with dad.

R I think I prefer housework to homework!

J Me too! I'm happy I haven't got exams this year!

Exercise 9 1.20 page 11

- 1 /aɪ/ 2 /ʌ/ 3 /æ/ 4 /u:/

1D Grammar

Present simple (negative and interrogative)

Exercise 2 1.21 page 12

They are probably brother and sister. They are fighting over the remote control because they want to watch different programmes on TV.

Exercise 3 page 12

1 don't 2 doesn't 3 Do 4 don't

For further practice of the present simple (negative and interrogative): Grammar Builder 1D

page 124

5 Negative I don't work, You don't work, He / She / It doesn't work, We don't work, You don't work, They don't work Interrogative Do I work?, Do you work?, Does he / she / it work?, Do we work?, Do you work?, Do they work?

6 1 doesn't 2 doesn't 3 don't 4 don't 5 don't 6 doesn't

7 1 Does Henry like school?
2 Do Liam and Steven visit their uncle at weekends?
3 Do you tidy your bedroom?
4 Does it rain a lot in Scotland?
5 Does Vicky ride a horse?
6 Do you and Fred speak Italian?

8 a 3 b 5 c 1 d 6 e 2 f 4

9 2 Does Emma live in a big house? Yes, she does.
3 Do Ed and Emma study biology at school? Yes, they do.
4 Does Emma speak Italian? No, she doesn't.
5 Does Ed live in a big house? No, he doesn't.
6 Do Ed and Emma like dancing? No, they don't.

10 1 Do 2 Does 3 Do 4 Do 5 Do 6 Does

Exercise 4 page 12

2 I don't like rap music.
3 My cousins Emma and Zoe don't speak Spanish.
4 My stepbrother Nick doesn't play in a volleyball team.
5 Joe and I don't walk to school.
6 You don't study Chinese.

Exercise 5 page 12

1 Do you live near the school?
2 Does your best friend like football?
3 Do your parents both work?
4 Do you and your friends go out on Friday evenings?
5 Do you wear jeans to school?

Exercise 7 page 12

1 I get up / don't get up early on Saturdays.
2 I play / don't play ice hockey.
3 I walk / don't walk to school every day.
4 I use / don't use computers at school.
5 I watch / don't watch TV every evening.
6 I argue / don't argue a lot with my friends.
7 I speak / don't speak French.
8 I like / don't like dancing.
9 I do / don't do a lot of homework at weekends.

1E Word Skills

Singular and plural nouns

Exercise 2 page 13

the Beckhams' daughter, Harper

Exercise 3 page 13

a footballer – footballers, jacket – jackets, team – teams, fan – fans, son – sons, daughter – daughters b dress – dresses c tattoo – tattoos, hero – heroes d family – families, company – companies, accessory – accessories, charity – charities e boy – boys f wife – wives g child – children

Exercise 4 page 13

It is indicated by the word *plural*.

Exercise 5 page 13

1 uncles 2 addresses 3 days 4 videos 5 matches
6 lives 7 ladies 8 teeth 9 mothers 10 knives

Exercise 6 page 13

a clothes, sunglasses, jeans
b jewellery, football, work

Exercise 7 page 13

1 My jeans **are** very old.
2 Put the **knives** and forks on the table.
3 ✓
4 I'd like some **information** about trains.
5 Can I see some **photos** of your family?
6 ✓
7 She's got very big **feet**.
8 I've got lots of **homework** this evening.

Exercise 8 page 13

(Possible questions)

Is David Beckham British? (Yes, he is.)
Are Romeo and Cruz boys? (Yes, they are.)
Is Victoria David's daughter? (No, she's his wife.)
Are Posh and Becks married? (Yes, they are.)
Is Harper David's son? (No, she isn't. She's his daughter.)

1F Reading

Sibling rivalry

Exercise 2 page 14

1 E 2 A 3 C 4 D

Exercise 3 1.22 page 14

Exercise 4 page 14

The best summary is a.

Summary b isn't correct because the main idea is that it is common for siblings not to get along as children. However, this changes for most people when they become adults. Summary c isn't correct because the article says the opposite: people do change.

Exercise 5 page 14

1 about 2 from 3 in 4 on 5 of 6 about

Exercise 6 page 14

2 in 3 at 4 on 5 from

1G Speaking

Describing people

Exercise 1 page 16

- 1 wavy
- 2 straight, blue
- 3 short, glasses, moustache

For further practice of describing people:

Vocabulary Builder 1G page 117

- 1 1 medium height 2 slim 3 attractive
4 a beard 5 eyes 6 long 7 hair 8 curly
- 2 (Possible answers)
1 He's tall and medium weight. He's got dark, wavy hair and a beard. He's got dark eyes.
2 She's slim and medium height. She's got long, straight, fair hair and glasses.
3 Students' own answers.

Exercise 2 1.23 page 16

Tom is the boy near the left side of the photo. Brendan is the boy on the right.

Exercise 4 1.24 page 16

- 1 Sally 2 isn't 3 one person 4 is 5 good 6 likes

Transcript

- 1 Marcus Hi, Emma.
Emma Hi, Marcus.
M Where's Sally?
E I don't know. Is she here?
M Yes, she is.
E Is she with Dan?
M I don't know. I don't know Dan. What does he look like?
E He's quite short, with medium-length red hair. And he wears glasses.
M Is that him, over there, in the black T-shirt and jeans?
E Yes, but he isn't with Sally.
M I can see that.
E Well, maybe she's in the kitchen. Go and look.
M OK.
- 2 Tina Hi, Ryan.
Ryan Hello, Tina.
T Do you know George?
R No, I only know one person here – you.
T Really?
R Who is George, anyway?
T He's in my class at school. I sit next to him in maths. He's got wavy, fair hair and blue eyes.
R Is that him, with Linda?
T Yes, that's him. He's got a blue jacket and black trousers.
R And who's that next to him, with the short fair hair and glasses?
T That's his sister. She's called Lisa. She's really nice too.
R She is very good-looking.
T Let me introduce you.
R No.
- 3 Lucy Hi, Fred.
Fred Hi, Lucy. Good party, isn't it?
L Yeah, it's great.
F Hey Lucy, who's that over there?

- L Where?
F With Maisie. She's tall, with curly dark hair.
- L With a blue dress?
F No, the other girl. She's got a green dress.
- L That's Kate.
F Oh, right.
L She's really nice. She's new in my class.
F She is very attractive.
L Yes, she is. She is really nice, too.
F Who's that with her?
L That's Liam. He's her boyfriend.
F Oh.

Exercise 5 1.24 page 16

- 1 Dan is quite short, with **medium-length** red hair. His T-shirt is **black** and he wears glasses.
- 2 George has got a **blue** jacket and **black** trousers. He's got **wavy** fair hair and **blue** eyes.
- 3 Kate is tall, with curly **dark** hair. Her dress is **green**.

Transcript

See exercise 4.

1H Writing

A personal profile

Exercise 1 page 17

Family Lauren: n/a; James: a brother in Year nine, a step-sister at university

Home Lauren: an apartment near the school; James: n/a

School subjects Lauren: science, art, languages; James: n/a

Hobbies Lauren: films, dancing, reading, shopping; James: playing the guitar, writing songs, listening to music, playing football and tennis, surfing

Ambition Lauren: be a vet, travel; James: be a song-writer

Exercise 2 page 17

- 1 Lauren and James are in Year 12.
- 2 Lauren's hobbies are films, dancing, reading, shopping. James's hobbies are playing the guitar, writing songs, listening to music, playing football and tennis, surfing.
- 3 Lauren's ambition is to be a vet. James's ambition is to be a song-writer.

Exercise 3 page 17

Lauren: friendly; James: creative and hard-working

For further practice of personality adjectives: Vocabulary Builder 1H page 117

- 4 **Positive** brave, creative, friendly, hard-working, honest, patient, polite, sensible
Negative lazy, mean, moody, rude, selfish
- 5 1 lazy 2 sensible 3 An honest 4 brave
5 selfish 6 patient

Exercise 4 page 17

- 1 in 2 with 3 to 4 to 5 at 6 at

Exercise 5 page 17

I'm – I am It's – It is I've got – I have got My name's – My name is She's – She is

Exercise 6 page 17

Lauren's paragraph contains five paragraphs. James's contains four. Each paragraph is about one topic.

Exercise 7 page 17

(Possible answer)

Paragraph 1 Topic: family; Information: brothers and sisters

Paragraph 2 Topic: school; Information: favourite subjects

Paragraph 3 Topic: hobbies; Information: playing the piano, painting, running

Paragraph 4 Topic: ambition; Information: personality, to be a doctor

Exercise 8 page 17

(Model answer)

My name is Dan. I'm in Year 10. I live with my parents and grandmother.

My favourite subjects are English and science. I'm keen on science because I'm interested in plants and animals.

Sport is an important part of my life. I love running and I'm on the school athletics team. I love music too and I play the piano.

I'm patient and hard-working. My ambition is to become a doctor. I want to do good in the world and to help people.

Map of resources**2A Vocabulary**

Student's Book, pages 18–19; Workbook, page 20
Photocopiable: 2A (Daily routine)

2B Grammar

Student's Book, page 20; Workbook, page 21
Photocopiable: 2B (*have to*)

2C Listening

Student's Book, page 21; Workbook, page 22

2D Grammar

Student's Book, page 22; Workbook, page 23
Photocopiable: 2D (Adverbs of frequency; question words)

2E Word Skills

Student's Book, page 23; Workbook, page 24

2F Reading

Student's Book, pages 24–25; Workbook, page 25

2G Speaking

Student's Book, page 26; Workbook, page 25
Photocopiable: Functional Language Practice: Giving advice

2H Writing

Student's Book, page 27; Workbook, page 27

Culture 2

Student's Book, page 109
DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 2

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 2**End of unit**

Unit Review: Workbook, pages 28–29
Photocopiable: Grammar Review
Exam Skills Trainer 1: Student's Book, pages 28–29
Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 2

2A Vocabulary**Daily routine****Exercise 1** page 18

A wake up B have dinner C have breakfast D go to bed E have lunch F get dressed G arrive at school H leave school

Exercise 2 page 18

1 wake up 2 get dressed 3 have breakfast
4 arrive at school 5 have lunch 6 leave school
7 have dinner 8 go to bed

Exercise 3 page 18

1 quarter to nine 2 quarter past five 3 eleven o'clock
4 twenty-five past four 5 five to eleven 6 quarter past midnight / twelve

Exercise 4 1.25 page 19

2 7.45 3 8.20 4 12.15 5 2.50 6 7.30 7 10.00

Transcript

During the week, I get up at twenty past seven. I have breakfast at quarter to eight and then I go to school. I arrive at school at twenty past eight. (It's very close to my house!) At school, I have lunch at quarter past twelve. At the end of the school day, I leave school. That's at ten to three. At home, I have dinner with my family. We have dinner at half past seven. I go to bed at ten o'clock.

Extra activity

- Say: *My favourite time of day is from seven o'clock until bed time. I have dinner with my family and then we watch TV. We relax together.*
- Ask students to think of their favourite time of day and what they like about it. Ask a student: *When is your favourite time of day?* Elicit an answer.
- In groups of three or four, students ask and answer questions about their favourite time of day.

Exercise 5 page 19

(Possible answers)

- 2 What time does she have breakfast? She has breakfast at quarter to eight.
- 3 What time does she arrive at school? She arrives at school at twenty past eight.
- 4 What time does she have lunch? She has lunch at quarter past twelve.
- 5 What time does she leave school? She leaves school at ten to three.
- 6 What time does she have dinner? She has dinner at half past seven.
- 7 What time does she go to bed? She goes to bed at ten o'clock.

Exercise 7 1.26 page 19

1 music 2 I.C.T. 3 P.E. (physical education) 4 English
5 maths 6 art and design 7 geography 8 French
9 chemistry 10 economics

Exercise 10 1.27 page 19

1 I.C.T. 2 French 3 German 4 Music
5 Art and design 6 Geography

Transcript

1 It's five past nine on Wednesday.

Teacher Now, open the first window again and click 'RUN'.
Tim It doesn't work!

Teacher Is there a problem, Tim?

Tim It doesn't work. My program doesn't work!

Teacher Let me see ...

2 It's quarter past eleven on Wednesday.

Teacher Bonjour, les enfants!

Class Bonjour, Madame.

Teacher Asseyez-vous.

Tim Hmm?

Girl Sit down!

Tim Oh, OK. D'accord.

3 It's twenty past eight on Thursday.

Teacher Guten Morgen!

Tim Guten Morgen.

Teacher Wie geht es Ihnen heute?

Tim Er ... Guten Morgen!

Teacher Come in, Tim. Sit down.

Tim OK!

4 It's half past ten on Thursday.

Teacher OK ... now, let's start again. From the beginning.

Two, three ...

Teacher That's good. But can we try it again? This time slowly. Two, three ...

5 It's five past nine on Friday.

Teacher Tim, have you got a problem?

Tim Yes. I can't find the blue ... or the red paint.

Teacher All the colours are on your table. Look for them!

Tim Oh, it's OK. Sam's got it.

Teacher Listen, everyone. You've got ten minutes to finish your pictures.

6 It's ten to two on Friday.

Teacher OK, so China, Japan, India ... these are countries in which continent?

Tim Asia!

Teacher Yes, Tim. Very good. Do you know any more?

Tim Erm ... Brazil?

Teacher No, Brazil isn't in Asia. Where is it?

Tim Europe.

Teacher It's in South America!

2B Grammar

have to

Exercise 2 page 20

How old do you have to be to go to the BRIT School?

(interrogative) You have to be between fourteen and nineteen years old to study at the BRIT School. (affirmative)

You also have to live in or near London. (affirmative) Do you have to pay to study there? (interrogative) The BRIT School is a state school so the students don't have to pay. (negative) Do the students have to study all the normal subjects?

(interrogative) As a state school, the BRIT School has to follow the National Curriculum. (affirmative)

Exercise 3 1.28 page 20

Exercise 4 page 20

1 have to / don't have to 2 has to / doesn't have to

3 have to / don't have to 4 has to / doesn't have to

5 have to / don't have to

For further practice of *have to*:

Grammar Builder 2B page 126

1 2 We have to speak English in class.

3 I don't have to sing in my music lessons.

4 My brother doesn't have to work at weekends.

5 My brother and I have to share a bedroom.

6 I have to do the ironing at home.

7 My little sister has to go to bed early.

8 My mum doesn't have to use a computer at work.

2 1 get up 2 go 3 do 4 help 5 be 6 practise

Exercise 5 page 20

2 She doesn't have to make her own breakfast.

3 She doesn't have to walk to school.

4 She has to do P.E. at school.

5 She has to take exams.

6 She doesn't have to stay at school after 3.15.

2C Listening

Unusual schools

Exercise 2 page 21

1 choose 2 go 3 take 4 mark 5 have 6 meet
7 don't

Exercise 4 1.30 page 21

A 3 October / October 3rd / the third of October

B 1,100 / one thousand one hundred

C 1 April 2001 / April 1st 2001 / 01.04.2001 / the first of April, two thousand and one

D 7.45 / quarter to eight

E 1,000 / one thousand

F June 2019 / June, two thousand and nineteen

G 7.30 / seven thirty

Transcript

A My birthday is the third of October.

B My school has got about one thousand one hundred students.

C My date of birth is April the first, twenty oh one.

D I usually leave home at quarter to eight in the morning.

E I've got over a thousand songs on my smartphone.

F I take my school leaving exams in June two thousand and nineteen.

G We usually have dinner at about seven thirty.

Exercise 5 1.31 page 21

Sentence 3 is not true.

Transcript

Interviewer I am with Nathan King. He's a student at the Brooklyn Free School. Hi Nathan and welcome to the programme.

Nathan Hi.

I So, Nathan, how old are you and which grade are you in?

N I'm fifteen. In a normal school, that's tenth grade, but at my school we don't have grades.

I Can you tell us a bit about the school? How big is it?

N Well, the school has got two parts. One for students aged four to eleven and the other for students between twelve and eighteen. My part of the school has about 60 students.

I And does each class have a lot of students?

N No, the classes are very small. Usually about three or four students. And they are mixed ages, so I sometimes sit next to a student who is maybe twelve or sometimes I sit next to someone who is eighteen.

I Really? Does that work well?

N Yes. For example, there's a boy of thirteen at the school who's good at maths, I mean really good at maths, much better than me, and we're in the same maths class. And he helps me!

I What other subjects do you study?

N We study the usual subjects, maths, English, science, geography, music and so on. But we don't have to study anything. We can study what we like. We have two meetings every day, one in the morning and one after lunch. That's when we decide what classes we want to attend.

- I What time does school start and finish?
 N We start at nine o'clock in the morning and finish at three in the afternoon.
 I Does it cost a lot of money to study at the school?
 N Yes, it's \$20,000 a year. But not everyone has to pay. If you come from a poor family, it costs less.
 I Do you think it's a good school?
 N Yes, it's great. I love it. I learn what I want to learn, and I learn when I want to learn – not when a teacher tells me.
 I Thank you, Nathan.

Exercise 6 1.31 [page 21](#)
 1 a 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 b 7 c

Transcript

See exercise 5.

Exercise 7 [page 21](#)
 (Possible answers) Brooklyn Free School students choose their own subjects. At our school, we have to do certain subjects. Brooklyn Free School students don't have to take exams, but we do. Brooklyn Free School teachers don't usually mark students' work, but our teachers mark our work. At Brooklyn Free School, there are classes with students from ages twelve to eighteen. At our school, classes aren't mixed ages. Brooklyn Free School starts at nine in the morning, but our school starts at half past eight. There aren't many rules at Brooklyn Free School, but our school has got a lot of rules.

2D Grammar

Adverbs of frequency; question words

Exercise 1 1.32 [page 22](#)
 Maisie is in photography club and music club. Ben plans to join photography club.

Exercise 2 [page 22](#)
 1 sometimes 2 often 3 usually 4 always

Exercise 3 [page 22](#)
 1 before
 2 after

For further practice of adverbs of frequency:
Grammar Builder 2D [page 126](#)

4	1 never	2 sometimes	3 usually	4 always
5	hardly ever	6 often		
5	1 always	2 usually	3 often	4 sometimes
5	hardly ever	6 never		
6	2 She often meets her friends in town after school.			
3	She sometimes does her homework on the bus.			
4	She is always hungry at break time.			
5	She hardly ever takes the bus to school.			
6	She is never late for school.			

Exercise 4 [page 22](#)
 1 Kate sometimes watches TV in her bedroom.
 2 Joe is often late for school.
 3 Harry never goes dancing.
 4 Hannah hardly ever does sport at the weekend.
 5 William usually listens to music in bed.
 6 Ryan is always thirsty after football training.

Exercise 5 [page 22](#)

- 1 Sally never loads the dishwasher.
- 2 I often send text messages to my friends.
- 3 Jake is hardly ever hungry at school.
- 4 Harry and Alex sometimes go to bed after midnight.
- 5 Frank usually tidies his bedroom at the weekend.
- 6 The school bus is often late in the morning.
- 7 Lisa always plays computer games after school.

Exercise 7 [page 22](#)

Which, Who, How often, Why, When

Exercise 8 [page 22](#)

- 1 How
- 2 Where
- 3 When
- 4 How many
- 5 When
- 6 Whose

Exercise 9 [page 22](#)

(Possible answers)

- 1 At nine o'clock.
- 2 I'm (name).
- 3 Every day.
- 4 maths, English, French, chemistry, geography, history, biology, P.E., R.E. and economics.
- 5 At the shopping centre.
- 6 (none)

Exercise 10 [page 22](#)

- 1 How many
- 2 Who
- 3 How
- 4 Where
- 5 When
- 6 What
- 7 Which

For further practice of question words:

Grammar Builder 2D [page 126](#)

- 7 1 C
- 2 A
- 3 D
- 4 E
- 5 B

- 8 1 What time
- 2 Where
- 3 What
- 4 How many
- 5 Which
- 6 Who

2E Word Skills

Prepositions of time

Exercise 2 [page 23](#)

- 1 in
- 2 at
- 3 on
- 4 in
- 5 at
- 6 in
- 7 in, at
- 8 on

Extra activity

- Put students in two teams. Write the following on the board:

a July	b summer	c Thursday	d 8.00
e the afternoon	f 5 November	g December	
h 16 January	i autumn	j Monday	k the morning
- The first team to call out the correct preposition gets a point.

KEY

- | | | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| a in | b in | c on | d at | e in | f on | g in | h on |
| i in | j on | k in | | | | | |

Exercise 3 [page 23](#)

- 1 in September, in July, in March or April, in June
- 2 at nine o'clock in the morning
- 3 on Saturday morning, on Sunday
- 4 in 2017
- 5 at Christmas, Easter
- 6 in the summer
- 7 in the afternoon
- 8 on 25 August

Exercise 4 [page 23](#)

- 1 before
- 2 until
- 3 After
- 4 from
- 5 to
- 6 during

Exercise 6 [page 23](#)

- 1 before
- 2 on
- 3 at; in
- 4 after; on
- 5 in / during
- 6 at

2F Reading

Dangerous journeys

Exercise 3 page 24

1 A 2 C 3 B 4 D

Exercise 4 page 24

A 4 B 2 C 4 D 3 E 1 F 2 G 1

Exercise 5 page 25

safe – dangerous narrow – wide large – small wet – dry

Extension: Stronger classes

- With a **stronger class**, write these adjectives from the text on the board: *broken, deep, huge, fast*.
- Ask students what each adjective refers to. (*broken*: the bridge; *deep*: the river in Minh Hoa; *huge*: the river in Colombia; *fast*: the journey in Colombia)
- Elicit or teach the opposite of the adjectives: *broken – fixed / repaired; deep – shallow; huge – small / tiny; fast – slow*. Students think of something that can be described by each adjective.

Exercise 6 page 25

1 jungle 2 valley 3 path 4 boat 5 mountain
6 bridge 7 river 8 rope

Exercise 7 page 25

1 which 2 Who 3 How 4 How many 5 Where
6 Why 7 What

Exercise 8 page 25

1 It's in China. 2 the head teacher of the school
3 10 metres high 4 twenty children 5 It's in Vietnam.
6 Because there is no bridge. 7 It's the Rio Negro.

2G Speaking

Giving advice

Exercise 1 1.34 page 26

Exercise 3 page 26

What do you think I should do? (interrogative) Should I tell Mrs Jones? (interrogative) No, you shouldn't do that. (negative) But you should talk to Sophie. (affirmative) You should explain that copying work is a bad idea ... (affirmative)

For further practice of adjectives for feelings:

Vocabulary Builder 2G page 118

- 1 A sad B angry C scared D worried E happy F tired
2 1 excited 2 embarrassed 3 guilty 4 surprised 5 bored

Exercise 4 page 26

1 a should b shouldn't 2 a shouldn't b should
3 a should b shouldn't

Exercise 5 1.35 page 26

1 tired 2 sad 3 embarrassed 4 worried

Transcript

- 1 Girl Hi. Are you OK?
Boy Yes. I'm fine. But I need to sleep!
G Oh dear. And we've got an exam tomorrow.
B I know.
G You should go to bed early tonight.
B I can't. It's my cousin's birthday party this evening.
G Do you have to go?
B Yes, I do.
G Well, you shouldn't stay late. Just explain to him about the exam.
B Yes, you're right. Thanks.
2 Boy Hi. How are you?
Girl I'm really not happy.
B Oh no! Why not? What's the problem?
G I want to go to a pop concert on Saturday. But my parents say I can't go.
B Why not?
G Because of my school work. My grades this year aren't very good.
B Well, you should talk to your parents again. Explain how you feel. And promise to work really hard all year!
G Yes, you're right. Good idea. I should talk to them again.
B Good luck!
3 Girl Hi there. Are you OK?
Boy Not really. Look!
G What's that? Your brother's Facebook page?
B It's my friend's Facebook page. But look at this photo of me.
G Ha ha!
B Don't laugh! It's not funny. It's really embarrassing! I'm not happy about it.
G Does your friend know that?
B No, he doesn't.
G Well, you should send him a text and ask him to delete the photo.
B Yes, good idea. Thank you.
4 Boy Hello! How are you? OK?
Girl Not really ...
B Why not?
G Because I can't find my phone.
B Is it in your bag?
G No, and I need it. I know it's here, at school.
B Why have you got it at school?
G I often bring my phone to school. I play games on it at lunchtime.
B You should leave it at home. You don't really need it here.
G I don't agree.
B OK. But that's my advice.
G You're probably right, but it doesn't help me now because I still can't find my phone!

For further practice of **should**:

Grammar Builder 2G page 126

10 1 should 2 shouldn't 3 shouldn't 4 should
5 shouldn't 6 should

Exercise 6 1.35 page 26

1 d 2 a 3 b 4 f

Transcript

See exercise 5.

2H Writing

An announcement

Exercise 1 page 27

musical

For further practice of school events:

Vocabulary Builder 2H page 118

- 3 1 open day 2 musical 3 concert 4 jumble sale
5 parents' evening 6 raffle 7 school club 8 sports day
9 school trip 10 school camp 11 play

Exercise 2 page 27

Cats musical judo club school club

Exercise 3 page 27

Come to our musical! Please help us ... Come and see us dance! Come and hear us sing! Please bring a friend! Buy your ticket ... Then come to judo club Don't worry! Call Sarah on 0990 237789 ...

Exercise 4 page 27

- 1 Don't forget 2 Put 3 Call 4 Visit 5 Don't miss
6 Bring

For further practice of imperative:

Grammar Builder 2H page 126

- 11 1 Don't eat; Share 2 Stop 3 Meet; Don't be
4 Put 5 Don't swim 6 don't open

Exercise 5 page 27

(Possible answers)

- 1 sports day
2 on the school playing fields
3 Monday 7 March, 9.00–3.00
4 a great way to have fun with your classmates and do sport
5 races and competitions, delicious food, awards
6 visit school website for more details

Exercise 6 page 27

(Possible answer)

Sports day!

Come and run, jump and play on Monday 7 March, 9.00–3.00 on the school playing fields! This is a great way to have fun with your classmates and do sport. There will be races and competitions, delicious food and awards.
Visit the school website for more details.

1 Exam Skills Trainer

Reading

Exercise 1 page 28

- 1 D 2 B 3 C 4 E 5 A

Exercise 2 page 28

- 1 B (he's homeschooled; I can get up when I want to) 2 D (I have got internet lessons on English, maths and politics.)
3 D (Brazil, Greece, Cuba, Turkey and 24 other countries say 'no' to homeschooling.) 4 B (I learn the same things. It's just that that I learn them in a different way.)

Listening

Exercise 3 page 28

- 1 cupboard, ruler, shelf 2 drums, flute, saxophone
3 cousin, daughter, niece 4 beard, short, straight
5 get dressed, have breakfast, wake up

Exercise 4 1.36 page 28

- A 5 B 3 C 1 D 6 E 2 F no match G 4

Transcript

- 1 My family's Chinese. I live with my parents and grandparents. My grandparents don't speak English so at home we usually speak Chinese. But I speak English at school.
2 I love music! I listen to music every day and I often play the piano. My favourite instrument is the guitar.
3 My dad's a famous tennis player and my mum's a famous film star. All my friends walk to school, but my sister and I have to go by car and come home by car.
4 I go to dance classes before and after school every day. I have to get up very early for the morning class. Then I have another class after school. I usually get home at seven in the evening and I do my homework after dinner. I love dancing but I sometimes feel tired during the day.
5 I don't take a big book bag to school because at my school we do all our lessons on computers. We work from nine in the morning until four thirty in the afternoon – the same as people at work. Everyone at the school is really good at mathematics and reading.
6 My brother, Marty, is three and he can't walk. He needs a lot of help. Mum and Dad can't cook every day, and they don't have time to do the ironing or tidy the bedrooms, so I do a lot of things around the house.

Use of English

Exercise 5 page 29

- 1 16 February 2000 2 16 February 2000 3 similar
4 no 5 yes

Exercise 6 page 29

- 1 A 2 C 3 C 4 A 5 A 6 A 7 B 8 C 9 C 10 C

Speaking

Exercise 7 page 29

- 1 problem 2 angry 3 advice 4 should 5 shouldn't
6 should 7 Thanks

Exercise 8 page 29

(Model answer)

- A Hi. Are you OK?
B No, actually. I'm upset. Can I ask your advice about something?
A Of course. What's the problem?
B My English classes are very difficult. I got a C on my test, but I want an A.
A Oh, that's too bad. But you shouldn't worry about it too much. You should speak to your teacher and ask him to help you. And you should study more for the next test.
B Thanks!

Writing

Exercise 9 page 29

1 E 2 B 3 F 4 C 5 A 6 D

Exercise 10 page 29

(Model answer)

COOKING CLUB

Do you want to make new friends and learn to cook?

Come and join us at cooking club! Where: The Food Tech room

When: Every Wednesday at 3.30

Every week, we make a different dish. You will get a shopping list one week before each meeting and we will all make the same recipe.

If you have any questions, contact Mrs Bailey on extension 4211.

3 Style

Map of resources

3A Vocabulary

Student's Book, pages 30–31; Workbook, page 30

Photocopiable: 3A (Clothes)

3B Grammar

Student's Book, page 32; Workbook, page 31

Photocopiable: 3B (Present continuous)

3C Listening

Student's Book, page 33; Workbook, page 32

3D Grammar

Student's Book, page 34; Workbook, page 33

Photocopiable: 3D (Contrast: present simple and present continuous)

3E Word Skills

Student's Book, page 35; Workbook, page 34

3F Reading

Student's Book, pages 36–37; Workbook, page 35

Photocopiable: Functional Language Practice: Expressing opinions

3G Speaking

Student's Book, page 38; Workbook, page 35

3H Writing

Student's Book, page 39; Workbook, page 36

Culture 3

Student's Book, page 110

DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 3

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 3

End of unit

Unit Review: Workbook, pages 38–39

Photocopiable: Grammar Review

Exam Skills Trainer 2: Workbook, pages 40–41

Cumulative Review 2 (Units 1–3): Workbook, pages 110–111

Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 3

3A Vocabulary

Clothes

Exercise 2 page 30

- 1 shirt 2 T-shirt 3 leggings 4 trousers 5 jumper
6 trainers 7 scarf 8 hat 9 boots 10 jacket 11 cap
12 jeans 13 shoes

Exercise 3 2.02 page 30

Exercise 4 2.03 page 31

- 2 Blake 3 Hailey 4 Lauren 5 Justin 6 Lily

Transcript

- 1 This person has got black boots and a black top.
- 2 This person has got white trainers and a red top.
- 3 This person has got a white jacket and a black cap.
- 4 This person has got a black hat and a black jacket.
- 5 This person has got red trousers and a blue top.
- 6 This person has got black boots and a white hat.

Exercise 5 2.04 page 31

Archie tracksuits, trainers

Violet skirt, jacket, pyjamas

Arthur jeans, sweatshirt, tracksuit

Lola trousers, sweatshirt, leggings, T-shirt

Transcript

Archie I've got a brother and we're about the same size, so I often wear his tracksuits. I just take them from his bedroom, I don't ask. I use his trainers, too. He isn't always happy about it! But what can I do? Often, I can't find any clean clothes in my room because I play football every day. So I wear my brother's clothes. Simple!

Violet We have to wear a uniform for school every day: I wear a black skirt, a white top and a blue jacket. But at the weekend, I always wear really casual clothes. On Sundays, I always get up really late. I have breakfast, and lunch, in my pyjamas!

Arthur We don't have a uniform at my school, so I usually wear jeans and a sweatshirt. I usually wear the same clothes at the weekend – but I wear a tracksuit when I do sport.

Lola We have to wear school uniform at my school – black trousers, a white top and a red sweatshirt. But I don't always wear those clothes after school. Sometimes, when I get home, I change. I wear leggings and a T-shirt.

Exercise 6 2.04 page 31

- 1 are often 2 always wears 3 never gets dressed
4 usually wears 5 sometimes changes

Transcript

See exercise 5.

3B Grammar

Present continuous

Exercise 2 page 32

Summer Sounds, Thursday 4 August, Cardiff

Exercise 3 page 32

We're having a fantastic time ... Finally, it isn't raining! The sun is shining! We're dancing ... What are you doing?

Exercise 4 page 32

- 1 am /'m 2 is /'s 3 are /'re 4 am not /'m not
5 is not /isn't 6 are not /aren't 7 Are 8 are
9 aren't 10 Is 11 is 12 isn't

Exercise 5 page 32

- 1 're sitting 2 'm taking 3 'm watching 4 's sleeping
5 're having 6 'm looking 7 's dancing 8 'm chatting

For further practice of present continuous: Grammar Builder 3B

(page 128)

- 1 2 taking 3 raining 4 waiting 5 having
6 chatting 7 wearing 8 doing
- 2 2 's raining 3 are doing 4 are chatting 5 'm
having 6 is taking 7 is singing 8 'm wearing
- 3 2 Those dogs aren't fighting. They're playing.
3 The bus isn't arriving. It's leaving.
4 My uncle isn't playing football. He's watching it /
football.
5 My aunt isn't doing aerobics. She's dancing.
6 I'm not playing a game on my phone. I'm writing
an email.
- 4 1 are you doing 2 Are you having 3 I'm not
4 Are they planning 5 they are 6 are they doing
7 are you playing 8 Are you having 9 are
- 5 1 Are you wearing trainers / boots / a T-shirt /
socks / a dark top? Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.
2 Are you sitting near the door / near the window /
near the board? Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.
3 Are you using a pen / a pencil / your phone / a
tablet? Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.

Exercise 6



2.05

(page 32)

- 1 are you doing 2 'm looking 3 'm holding
4 'm sitting 5 're waiting 6 aren't playing
7 'm leaving 8 Are you coming

3C Listening

Catwalk fashion

Exercise 1

(page 33)

baggy – tight; casual – smart; dark – light; long – short;
long-sleeved – short-sleeved; patterned – plain

Exercise 2

(page 33)

(Possible answers)

Top left She's wearing a red long-sleeved dress and long black boots. (She's also wearing large sunglasses, black tights and a red leather belt.)

Top right He's wearing a (light) blue long-sleeved top, a grey scarf, dark blue jeans and white trainers.

Bottom left He's wearing a long dark blue coat, a light green shirt and baggy grey shorts. He's wearing black socks and dark trainers.

Bottom right She's wearing a patterned long-sleeved top, tight jeans and (high-heeled) boots.

Exercise 3



2.06

(page 33)

- 1 visit 2 Japan 3 moment 4 hotel 5 today 6 copy

Exercise 5



2.07

(page 33)

- 1 collection 2 pyjamas 3 understand 4 disaster
5 dangerous 6 magazine 7 audience 8 amazing
9 wonderful 10 twenty-one 11 computer
12 seventeen

Exercise 6



2.08

(page 33)

- 1 F (The clothes in the show are for spring and summer.)
2 F (Stella and Tonya are wearing spring clothes.)

3 T

4 F (Stella has got a tight dress, a white scarf and boots.)

5 T

6 T

7 T

8 F (Martin falls over the photographer and the girls fall on top of Martin.)

Transcript

Host Hello and welcome to *Fashion Matters*. This week the programme is coming live from the London Fashion Show. So, let us go straight to, Joanna Mills, our reporter at the show. Hello, Joanna.

Joanna Thank you, Matthew. Good afternoon, everyone, and welcome to the show!

The audience is waiting for the first models to appear on the catwalk. The photographers are all here, their cameras ready. We are proud to present an exciting new designer: Zizi Malek! To open the show, here is Zizi's collection for spring and summer.

Our first models, Tonya and Stella, are coming down the catwalk now. The girls are wearing smart street outfits for spring. Tonya is wearing a short blue jacket over a baggy, short-sleeved, orange top and white shorts. She is also wearing a white cap and white, high-heeled shoes. Stella is wearing a tight, long-sleeved, orange dress with a white scarf and boots.

And here is Martin, our third model. He's wearing a long, blue cardigan over a yellow, patterned shirt. His trousers are difficult to describe. They look a bit like pyjama bottoms! He's also wearing amazing, yellow and black trainers. Now he's street dancing! That's a new idea for the catwalk. Very cool. He looks really fantastic!

The reporters are taking lots of photographs of him ... One photographer is going very close to the catwalk. That's a bit dangerous ... Oh, no, Martin's falling over the photographer! Ouch. Now the girls are falling on top of Martin! People in the audience are trying to help ... Oh, dear. That's a bit of a disaster ...

Exercise 7



2.09

(page 33)

- 1 afternoon, everyone
2 present, exciting, designer
3 models, coming, catwalk
4 difficult, describe, pyjama bottoms
5 reporters, photographs

3D Grammar

Contrast: present simple and present continuous

Exercise 2



2.10

(page 34)

- 1 She wants to buy a new top.
2 Joel is at home. He hates shopping.
3 He invites her to go to the cinema.

Exercise 3

(page 34)

- a present simple
b present continuous
c present continuous
d present simple
e present simple

Exercise 4 page 34

- 1 's raining – b 2 're learning – c 3 Do (you) know – e
4 live – d 5 play – a 6 don't understand – e
7 does (Fred) help – a

For further practice of the present simple and present continuous contrast:

Grammar Builder 3D page 128

- 6 1 a Are (you) having b Do (you) have 2 a 'm not wearing b doesn't wear 3 a stops b is stopping
7 1 are (you) doing 2 'm looking for 3 wear 4 do (you) want 5 'm not joking 6 Do you like 7 think

Exercise 5 page 34

- 1 are (you) doing 2 'm looking 3 loves 4 know
5 prefers 6 buys 7 reads 8 Are (you) planning
9 'm looking

3E Word Skills

Adjectives: opposites

Exercise 1 page 35

(Possible answer)

The women are working in a factory. They're making clothes. They sit at a desk and sew things all day. They use sewing machines. One woman in the photo is making trousers.

Exercise 2 2.11 page 35

- a Megan b Ryan c Molly d Jed

Exercise 3 page 35

good – bad cheap – expensive large – small
low – high dangerous – safe terrible – fantastic
similar – different true – false wrong – right
difficult – easy great – awful old – new

Exercise 5 page 35

- a unfair b comfortable

Exercise 6 page 35

- These jeans were very cheap.
- That yellow shirt looks fantastic!
- My bedroom is always very untidy / messy.
- It is safe to swim in that river.
- Jason is feeling unhappy / sad today.
- My mum works in a large / big clothes shop.

Exercise 7 page 35

- 1 unusual 2 low 3 difficult 4 new 5 wrong
6 similar

3F Reading

Teenage pressures

Exercise 1 page 36

- A girl is straightening her hair in front of a mirror.
- The girl is taking a selfie.
- The boy is exercising / (going) weight training.
- The girl is putting on make-up.

Exercise 2 page 36

Four of the writers believe that there is a problem with teenagers and image: Maria Baker, Sophie Ellis, Bob French and Luke Woods.

Exercise 4 page 36

Heading E mentions fashion shows (catwalk) and clothes shops. The article doesn't mention models or fashion shows. Heading G mentions the past. The article mentions hairstyles, but it doesn't say anything about hairstyles from the past.

Exercise 5 2.12 page 36

- 1 D 2 F 3 B 4 A 5 C

Exercise 6 page 36

female – male artificial – natural ordinary – special
fake – real

Exercise 7 page 36

unhappy, unkind, untidy, unnecessary

Exercise 8 page 36

- 1 really 2 view 3 honest 4 think 5 my

Exercise 9 page 36

- a 2 b 4 c 1 d 3 e 5 f 2 g 3 h 2 i 5

3G Speaking

Making arrangements

Exercise 1 page 38

- 1 play 2 go 3 go 4 go 5 have 6 meet

For further practice of free-time activities:
Vocabulary Builder 3G page 118

- 1 play board games, cards, chess, computer games, football, a musical instrument, tennis
go bowling, dancing, fishing, for a walk, ice-skating, rollerblading, skateboarding, swimming, to the beach, to the cinema have dinner in a café, lunch in a restaurant meet friends listen to music watch DVDs, TV read books, magazines

Exercise 2 2.13 page 38

going swimming; going shopping; playing football

Exercise 3 page 38

There are two examples: I'm going shopping with my sister. I'm playing football.

For further practice of the present continuous for future arrangements:

Grammar Builder 3G page 128

- 8 1 are (you) doing 2 'm going 3 'm visiting
4 'm not doing 5 'm meeting 6 're having
7 're meeting

Exercise 5 2.14 page 38

- 1 Saturday afternoon 2 the ice rink 3 have lunch
4 12.30 5 the cinema 6 7.45

Transcript

- 1 **Sophie** Hi Max. What are you doing at the weekend?
Max Nothing much. Do you want to do something?
S Yes. Do you fancy going ice-skating on Saturday afternoon?
M I'd love to, but I'm going fishing with my dad.
S Oh, what about on Sunday?
M Yeah, I'm free all day Sunday. Shall we go in the morning?
S Yes, great idea.
M Shall I come to your house?
S No, let's meet at the ice rink.
M OK. What time?
S 10.30.
M Great. See you there.
- 2 **Adam** Hi, Amy.
Amy Hi, Adam. Emma and I are going shopping on Saturday morning. Do you want to come along?
A No, thanks. I don't really like shopping.
A Well, are you doing anything at lunch-time? We're going to that little café near the cinema. Why don't you have lunch with us?
A OK. That sounds fun. What time?
A Let's say half past twelve.
A Cool. Half past twelve at the café. See you there.
- 3 **Tommy** Hi Caitlin. What are your plans for the weekend?
Caitlin On Saturday I'm going to London with my parents.
T What are you doing there?
C We're going shopping and then we're going to a musical in the evening.
T Sounds great. What about Sunday? How about seeing a film in the afternoon?
C Sorry, but I'm busy in the afternoon. I'm free in the evening, though.
T OK, the film is on again at quarter past eight. Let's meet at the cinema at quarter to eight.
C OK, great.

Exercise 6

2.15 page 38

- 1 going 2 come 3 have 4 seeing 5 meet

Exercise 7

page 38

Agreeing to suggestions Cool. Great idea.

That sounds fun. Yes, I'd love to.

Declining suggestions I'm afraid I can't. No, thanks.

Sorry, but I'm busy.

3H Writing

An email

Exercise 1

page 39

KEY

- 1 wallet 2 sunglasses 3 bracelet 4 headphones

For further practice of free-time activities:

Vocabulary Builder 3H page 118

- 2 A ring B earrings C purse D wallet
E necklace F gloves

- 3 1 headphones 2 bracelet 3 watch
4 sunglasses 5 belt

Exercise 2

page 39

- 1 1 thank him or her for the present; 2 describe what you are doing at the moment; 3 suggest an activity to do together; 4 mention a future arrangement
2 The third paragraph covers two points.

Exercise 3

page 39

My sister loves it too, but she can't borrow it.
I'm listening to music and trying to finish my geography project.
My brothers are playing football in the garden, so I want to go outside too!
Do you fancy going to the cinema on Saturday or meeting for a coffee?
I can't go on Saturday because my grandparents are coming to dinner.

Exercise 4

page 39

- 1 Hi 2 I hope you're well. 3 That's all from me.
4 Love for now,

Exercise 5

page 39

(Possible answers)

- 1 at home, studying very hard for school 2 a wallet
3 going to England to watch Manchester United play a football match 4 go walking or rock climbing in the mountains

Exercise 6

page 39

(Model answer)

Hello Dave,
Thanks for your email. How are things? I'm at home studying tonight because we have got a science test tomorrow and a maths test on Friday. There's a lot to learn, but I think I'm ready for the tests.
Thanks so much for the wallet. It's great! I need a new wallet, so this is the perfect gift!
Do you fancy going walking or rock climbing in the mountains next weekend? I can't go on Sunday because I'm going to England to watch Manchester United play a football match.
That's all from me.
Take care,
Jack

Map of resources**4A Vocabulary**

Student's Book, pages 40–41; Workbook, page 42

Photocopiable: 4A (Are you hungry?)

4B Grammar

Student's Book, page 42; Workbook, page 43

Photocopiable: 4B (*there is / there are; some and any*)**4C Listening**

Student's Book, page 43; Workbook, page 44

4D Grammar

Student's Book, page 44; Workbook, page 45

Photocopiable: 4D (*how much / how many, much / many / a lot of, a few / a little*)**4E Word Skills**

Student's Book, page 45; Workbook, page 46

4F Reading

Student's Book, pages 46–47; Workbook, page 47

4G Speaking

Student's Book, page 48; Workbook, page 48

Photocopiable: Functional Language Practice (Ordering food and drink in a restaurant)

4H Writing

Student's Book, page 49; Workbook, page 49

Culture 4

Student's Book, page 111

DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 4

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 4**End of unit**

Unit Review: Workbook, pages 50–51

Photocopiable: Grammar Review

Exam Skills Trainer 2: Student's Book, pages 50–51

Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 4

4A Vocabulary**Are you hungry?****Exercise 1** page 40

(Possible answers)

a Students' own answers b 2, 5, 6 c 2, 6 d 1, 3

Exercise 2 2.16 page 40

1 sausages, (mashed) potato, peas, onion

2 bread, cheese, olives

3 prawns, pasta

4 crisps, tomatoes, sandwiches

5 fish, mushrooms

6 melon, strawberries, pineapple

Not shown: apples, beef, carrots, chicken, cucumber, green / red peppers, lamb, lemon, lettuce, rice

Exercise 3 page 41

bread, mushroom, lemon / orange, potato, beef / lamb, pasta, fish, pineapple

Exercise 4 page 41

Countable: apples, carrots, crisps, cucumber, green / red peppers, lemon, melon, mushrooms, olives, onion, peas, pineapple, potato, prawns, sandwiches, sausages, strawberries, tomatoes

Uncountable: beef, bread, cheese, chicken, fish, lamb, lettuce, pasta, rice

For further practice of countable and uncountable nouns: Grammar Builder 4A page 130

1 2 U 3 U 4 U 5 C 6 C

Exercise 5 page 41

Eggs, pancakes, cakes, bananas and oranges are all countable because they are plural.

Exercise 6 2.17 page 41**Exercise 8** 2.18 page 41

Speaker 1: d Speaker 2: e Speaker 3: b Speaker 4: a

Transcript

- On Saturdays, we usually have Italian food for dinner. I love it! My dad always cooks it because his dad is Italian, so he knows all the recipes. He usually cooks meat, fish or pasta – I think my favourite is the fish. My other favourite dinner is my mum's home-made pizza. It's mainly cheese and tomato, but she puts some olives on it too. It's really nice.
- During the week, we usually have dinner at home. My mum always cooks because my dad doesn't get home from work in time. But at weekends, we often eat out. There's a café and a restaurant in our village, but the restaurant is quite expensive, so we usually go to the café. The burgers at the café are great: they're really big and they come with lots of chips. That's why I order them!
- When I'm at school, I have lunch in the canteen every day. They sell hot food there, but I don't have that. I bring my own lunch. I have a sandwich and some crisps. Sometimes I'm still hungry after the sandwich and the crisps, so I buy an orange or a banana.
- I don't have a lot of time in the mornings. I get up at seven o'clock and I leave the house at half past seven. I can't miss the bus! I usually have breakfast, but it's just a small cake; I eat it on the bus to school!

Exercise 10 2.18 page 411 the 2 some 3 a 4 a 5 the 6 the 7 a
8 some 9 the 10 the 11 an 12 a 13 a**Transcript**

See exercise 8.

4B Grammar

there is / there are; some and any

Exercise 3 page 42

- 1 There isn't 2 Is there 3 There are 4 There aren't
5 Are there

Exercise 4 page 42

- 1 There are 2 There is 3 There isn't 4 There are
5 There aren't 6 There isn't 7 There aren't

Exercise 5 page 42

There's some meat and some fish. (uncountable)

There are some vegetables, too. (countable)

There are some crisps ... (countable)

... there aren't any biscuits or sweets ... (countable)

... there isn't any chocolate. (uncountable)

There aren't any ready-made meals ... (countable)

... there isn't a microwave ... (countable)

Are there any things ... (countable)

Exercise 6 page 42

- 1 any 2 any 3 some 4 any 5 some 6 any

For further practice of ***there is / there are; some and any***: Grammar Builder 4B page 130

- 2 2 There are 3 There's 4 There's 5 There are
6 There's 8 There aren't 9 There isn't 10 There
are 11 There aren't 12 There isn't

3 2 Are there any 3 Is there a 4 Are there any
5 Are there any 6 Is there a 7 Is there a 8 Are
there any

6 1 any 2 an 3 a 4 some 5 a 6 some 7 a
8 any / a 9 some 10 some 11 any

Exercise 7 page 42

- 1 is 2 isn't 3 any 4 some 5 some 6 isn't 7 any
8 aren't 9 any 10 are

4C Listening

What a waste!

Exercise 1 page 43

(Possible answer)

This person is throwing away food she doesn't want. She's putting an egg in the rubbish bin with some old fruit and vegetables, probably because it isn't fresh.

Exercise 2 page 43

- 1 food 2 fruit 3 shape 4 meal 5 rubbish bin
6 angry 7 hungry 8 clothes

Exercise 3 2.19 page 43

- 1 Where's the bread? 2 Can you pass me the salt?
3 Dan is in the café. 4 His sister, Sophie, can cook.
5 What's the name of this song? 6 Sushi is from Japan.

Exercise 4 2.20 page 43

- 1 /frəm/ 2 /ə/ 3 /jə/ 4 /kən/ 5 /tə/ 6 /ən/
7 /səm/ 8 /fə/

Exercise 5 2.21 page 43

2 Adam gives food to homeless people.

Transcript

Interviewer Adam, you are a freegan from London in the UK. So, what is a freegan, exactly?

Adam Freegans eat food that other people throw away. And they sometimes give the food to other people.

I Why do you do that?

A Well, I believe that rich countries throw away too much food. And they throw away good food. It's bad for the environment.

I I see. So what exactly do you do?

A We collect food from supermarkets and restaurants. It's food that the supermarkets and restaurants throw away.

I Do you find the food in rubbish bins? Isn't it disgusting?

A No, we don't find it in rubbish bins! Supermarkets usually put food in bags and leave them outside. The food is fresh and unopened. Supermarkets order too much food and they throw away the extra food. It isn't old food. It's good food. There's nothing wrong with it. It's a terrible waste.

I And how often do you collect food?

A Once or twice a week. I usually find a lot of food. I take it and I sometimes give it to homeless people. And I still have enough food for me!

I What about food that is past its sell-by date? Do you eat that?

A Sell-by dates on food are usually incorrect. The food is often fresh after the sell-by date.

I When do you collect the food? What time of day?

A We can't do it while the shops and restaurants are open. So we have to collect the food at night.

I Are you a freegan because you don't want to spend money? And because you want free food?

A No, not at all. I'm a freegan because I want to make the environment better. When people waste food, they waste money and they waste time and resources.

I Are a lot of your friends freegans too?

A Some of them are. But all of my friends understand my lifestyle. And they often come to my house for dinner!

Exercise 6 2.22 page 43

- 1 is a, from, in the 2 He, from, and 3 He, the, or, a
4 He has to, the, when it's 5 A lot of, are
6 They, to his, for a

Exercise 7 2.21 page 43

- 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 F

Transcript

See exercise 5.

4D Grammar

how much / how many, much / many / a lot of, a few / a little

Exercise 1 2.23 page 44

He wants to make a carrot cake. He needs flour, carrots, sugar and eggs.

Exercise 2 page 44

How much flour have we got? How many carrots are there? There isn't much sugar in the bowl. And we

haven't got many eggs. Look, there's a lot of sugar in the cupboard.

Exercise 3 page 44

- 1 How many 2 How much 3 How much
4 How many 5 How much

For further practice of *How much / How many; much / many / a lot of, a few a little*:

Grammar Builder 44 page 130

- 7 2 There is a lot of cheese in the fridge.
3 We've got a lot of dictionaries in our classroom.
4 Have you got a little butter?
5 How much flour is there in the cupboard?
6 There are a few pens on the desk.
7 How many cakes are there on the table?
8 We've got a lot of milk.
- 8 1 a few; a little 2 a little 3 a few 4 a few
5 a little; a little 6 a few
- 9 2 How much homework do you usually get at the weekend?
3 How many English lessons do you have every week?
4 How much money do you spend on clothes every month?
5 How many CDs have you got at home?
6 How much food do you eat at lunch time?

Exercise 5 page 44

- 1 a lot of 2 many / a lot of 3 a lot of
4 much / a lot of 5 much / a lot of 6 a lot of

Exercise 6 page 44

There's a little flour in the cupboard, and there are a few carrots in the fridge.

Exercise 7 page 44

- 1 a little 2 a few 3 a few 4 a little 5 a few

Exercise 8 page 44

There are a lot of sandwiches. There are a lot of crisps. There are a few sausages. / There aren't many sausages. There are a few olives. / There aren't many olives. There are a few tomatoes. / There aren't many tomatoes. There are a few grapes. / There aren't many grapes. There's a lot of pizza. There's a little cheese. / There's not much cheese. There are a lot of strawberries.

4E Word Skills

Adjective + preposition

Exercise 1 page 45

chips, cheeseburger, doughnuts, crisps, pretzels, pizza, fizzy drink / soft drink

Exercise 2 page 45

Sentence 2 is false.

Exercise 4 page 45

- 1 for 2 about 3 to 4 with 5 of 6 on 7 for
8 with

Exercise 5 page 45

afraid of; kind of / to

Exercise 6 page 45

- 1 in 2 at 3 with 4 of 5 to 6 worried 7 popular
8 bad 9 used 10 kind

Exercise 7 page 45

- 1 at 2 at 3 in 4 for 5 for 6 for

4F Reading

Unusual restaurants

Exercise 1 page 46

- a 2 b 1 c 4 d 3

Exercise 3 page 46

- 1 Zauo 2 Ithaa 3 Dinner in the Sky

4 Hammock Café

Other restaurants: El Diablo; a restaurant in an old DC-10 aeroplane in Ghana; B.E.D in Miami

Exercise 4 page 46

- 1 A 2 A 3 B 4 B 5 C 6 C 7 D

Exercise 5 page 47

- 1 customers 2 different 3 Indian Ocean 4 countries
5 aeroplane 6 chairs 7 catch it

Exercise 6 page 47

- 2 Customers 3 knife 4 fork 5 tray 6 chef
7 menu 8 waiter

4G Speaking

In a restaurant

Exercise 1 page 48

(Example answer)

A young couple are sitting at a table in a restaurant or café. They are ordering some food and the waitress is writing down what they want. The man is looking at the menu.

The waitress is asking: What would you like to drink / eat? The customers are saying: Can I have ... , please?

Exercise 2 2.25 page 48

- 1 salad 2 Fish and chips 3 soup 4 roast lamb
5 orange juice

Exercise 3 page 48

There are three examples: I'd like the salad to start, please. I'd like the soup to start, please. Would you like anything to drink?

Exercise 5 2.26 page 48

- a 1, 3 b 2, 3 c 4

Transcript

1 Waitress Good evening.

Woman Can we have a table for two, please?

Wa Certainly. Is that table by the window OK?

Man Yes, that's perfect. Thanks.

Wo Can we see the menu, please?

Wa Yes, of course. One moment ... Here you are.
Wo Thanks.
Wa Would you like to order drinks now?
Wo No, it's OK. We can order drinks with the food.
Wa Of course.

2 Waitress Is everything OK for you?
Woman Yes, it's great. The fish is really nice.
Man Actually, can I have some bread, please?
Wa Certainly. Anything else?
Wo I'd like some water, please.
Wa Of course. Would you like some water, sir?
M Yes, I would. Thank you.
Wa Anything else?
Wo No, that's all. Thank you.

3 Woman Excuse me!
Waitress Yes. Can I help you?
Wo Can we see the dessert menu, please?
Wa Yes, of course. Here you are.
Man Er ... I'd like the fruit salad, please.
Wa Fruit salad. And for you, madam?
Wo Chocolate cake, please.
Was So that's one fruit salad and one chocolate cake. Thank you.
M Thanks.
4 Waitress Would you like a coffee or a tea?
Man No, thank you. Can we have the bill, please?
Wa Yes, of course. One moment. ... Here's your bill.
Woman Does it include service?
Wa No, it doesn't.
Wo OK. Thanks.
M How much is it?
Wo It's £54. That isn't expensive.
M No. It's a good café!
Wo And the waiters are nice.
M Yes. Let's leave a tip.

Exercise 6 2.26 page 48

- 1 for two – C 2 we see – C 3 OK for – W
4 I'd like – C 5 for you – W 6 Would (you) like – W
7 Can we – C 8 Does it – C 9 Let's – C

Transcript

See exercise 5.

For further practice of partitives:

Vocabulary Builder 4G page 119

- 1 2 bread 3 soup 4 crisps 5 tea
6 orange juice 7 jam 8 lemonade

2 (Possible answers)

- 1 bowl 2 packet 3 glass 4 cup 5 packet 6 jar

Exercise 7 page 48

orange juice

4H Writing

An invitation

Exercise 1 page 49

The photo matches invitation 3.
Invitation 2 is the formal one.

Exercise 2 page 49

Invitation 1 event a BBQ to celebrate a birthday date and time Sunday afternoon, 16 August place the beach
Invitation 2 event a New Year party date and time Saturday 31 January from 8 p.m. place 27 Stanton Road
Invitation 3 event a sleepover date and time Saturday 18 January at 6 place Lisa's house
Invitation 4 event a party to celebrate the end of exams date and time the end of June place the village hall in Greenwood

Exercise 3 page 49

- 1 celebrate 2 planning 3 join 4 bring 5 diary
6 hope 7 know 8 can 9 make

Exercise 4 page 49

Hi Anna,
I'm (grammar) having a party at my house (spelling) on 16 February (spelling) to celebrate my birthday. I'm inviting all my friends so it should be great (spelling) fun. You don't have to bring (vocabulary) any food or drink, but can I please borrow (vocabulary) your speakers? I've got a lot of music on my MP3 player but I haven't got (grammar) any (grammar) speakers.
The (grammar) party starts at 6 p.m. but can you please take (vocabulary) the speakers a few hours before that – in the afternoon? Let me know (spelling) if you can come (vocabulary).

Take care

Sally

Exercise 5 page 49

(Model answer)

Dear Barry,

It's Children's Day next week and I'm having a picnic on Saturday 20 June to celebrate. I hope you can come. It's between 3.00 and 7.00 p.m. I'm inviting the whole class so it should be fun.

You don't need to bring any food but please bring a football. Put it in your diary!

Take care,

Joanne

For further practice of parties and celebrations: Vocabulary Builder 4H page 119

- 3 A birthday party B end-of-exams party C New Year's Eve party D fancy-dress party E street party F barbecue

2 Exam Skills Trainer

Reading

Exercise 1 page 50

people	places	food	the senses
TV presenter chef guest restaurant-owner scientist	airport restaurant sweetshop university	curry dish peas sausage	sight smell sound taste touch

Exercise 2 page 50

1 E 2 C 3 G 4 B 5 H 6 F 7 A

Listening

Exercise 3 page 50

1 S 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 D

Exercise 4 2.27 page 50

1 C 2 C 3 D 4 D

Transcript

- 1 **Tina** Hi, Emmy.
Emmy Hi, Tina. Are you ready for the party?
T Yes, I think so.
E What are you wearing?
T Jeans, a long-sleeved top and trainers.
E You always wear jeans!
T They're comfortable! How about you? What are you wearing?
E Leggings and a dress. And trainers.
T With a dress?
E Well, they're quite smart. I think they look OK.
- 2 **Presenter** This is Bath Farmers' Market. You can get fresh fruit and vegetables here and there are stalls, you know, tables, with all sorts of pies, meat, cheese, bread and cakes. It's busy here today because it's the middle weekend of a food festival that takes place every October. The festival's called the Great Bath Feast and it's very popular. Hello What are you selling?
Boy Cakes, mostly, and some biscuits too.
P They look good! Home-made, I hope!
B Yes, of course. Well, we make them at school.
- 3 **Girl** Mum!
Mum Yes?
G Where's my T-shirt?
M There's a T-shirt on your bedroom floor.
G But that's a patterned T-shirt. I need a plain one to go with my outfit.
M Your old blue T-shirt is in here.
G Thanks, Mum
- 4 **Boy** What are you doing, Katie?
Girl Oh, hi James. I'm making soup for lunch.
B What kind of soup?
G Tomato and red pepper.
B Ergh, I'm not keen on red pepper.
G Well, there's some cold pasta in the fridge. There isn't much, but–
B That's OK. I'm not really very hungry. Is there any cheese?
G No, I don't think so. But there are a few prawns to go with the pasta.
B OK, sounds good to me.

Use of English

Exercise 5 page 51

(Possible answers)

1 read, verb 2 kitchen, noun 3 about, preposition
4 often, adverb 5 famous, adjective 6 a, article

Exercise 6 page 51

1 for 2 away 3 never 4 in 5 There 6 of 7 The
8 to 9 at 10 are

Speaking

Exercise 7 page 51

1 E 2 C 3 A 4 D 5 B

Exercise 8 page 51

(Model answer)

A Can we have a table for two, please?
C Yes, of course. Come with me.
B May we see the menu, please?
C Of course. Here it is.
A I'd like the soup to start, please.
C Certainly. And for your main course?
A I'll have the curry.
C Excellent. And for you?
B I'd like to start with the Italian salad.
C Certainly. And for your main course?
A I'll have the Japanese pizza.
—LATER—
C Would you like anything else?
A No, thank you. We'd like the bill, please.
C Certainly.

Writing

Exercise 9 page 51

1 We're planning a party to celebrate New Year.
2 Bring some DVDs with you.
3 I'm organising a film evening.
4 Would you like to join us?
5 Hope you can make it!

Exercise 10 page 51

(Model answer)

We're planning a party to celebrate the end of term. Would you like to join us? We're meeting on Friday 25 November at Ruby's Café. The theme of the evening is the 1960s, so please come dressed in 1960s fashion. And don't forget to bring 1960s music to play on Ruby's sound system!

Map of resources**5A Vocabulary**

Student's Book, pages 52–53; Workbook, page 52

Photocopiable: 5A (Places)

DVD: Unit 5

5B Grammar

Student's Book, page 54; Workbook, page 53

Photocopiable: 5B (Comparatives)

5C Listening

Student's Book, page 55; Workbook, page 54

5D Grammar

Student's Book, page 56; Workbook, page 55

Photocopiable: 5D (Superlatives)

5E Word Skills

Student's Book, page 57; Workbook, page 56

5F Reading

Student's Book, pages 58–59; Workbook, page 57

5G Speaking

Student's Book, page 60; Workbook, page 58

Photocopiable: Functional Language Practice (Asking for and giving directions)

5H Writing

Student's Book, page 61; Workbook, page 59

Culture 5

Student's Book, page 112

DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 5

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 5**End of unit**

Unit Review: Workbook, pages 60–61

Photocopiable: Grammar Review

Exam Skills Trainer 3: Workbook pages 62–63

Cumulative Review 1–5: Workbook, pages 112–113

Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 5

5A Vocabulary**Places****Exercise 1** page 52

- 1 shopping centre 2 fire station 3 bus station
4 museum 5 gym

Exercise 2 2.28 page 52**Exercise 3** 2.29 page 52

- 1 shopping centre 2 zoo 3 airport 4 museum
5 cinema 6 hospital 7 post office 8 library

Transcript**1 Man** OK. Where now?**Woman** I have to buy some shoes. What about you?**M** I'm hungry. I want to get a sandwich.**W** OK. Well, let's meet here in ... half an hour?**M** OK, that's perfect.**2 Boy** What are these?**Girl** They're crocodiles.**B** They aren't moving very much.**G** No. Come on, let's go and see the monkeys.**3 Man** Which gate is it?**Woman** I'm not sure. Which is our flight? Is it BA479?**M** Yes, it is – BA479 to Barcelona.**W** Erm ... it's gate fifteen. And it's boarding now! Come on!**4 Man** Excuse me. Where is the Ancient Greek room?**Woman** It's on the first floor – with Ancient Egypt.**M** Thank you. Oh, and what time do you close?**W** At five o'clock.**M** Right. Thanks!**5 Boy** Two bottles of water, please.**Girl** Hurry up. The film is starting!**B** And some chocolate peanuts. Oh, and these sweets.**G** I'm going in. Have you got my ticket?**B** Just a moment!**6 Woman** Mr Williams? Your leg is fine now. You can go home.**Man** Really? Are you sure?**Woman** Yes, I'm sure.**Man** But I can't walk very well.**W** You just need a few days at home.**M** Hmm. Can I speak to the doctor?**W** I am the doctor.**7 Woman** Can I help you?**Man** Yes. I'd like to send this to Australia.**W** Hmm. It's very heavy. Does it have to get there quickly?**M** Yes, it does. Is that very expensive?**W** Yes, it is. £64.70 – and it takes four days to get there.**M** How much?!**8 Man** Can I help you?**Woman** Hello. I'm looking for a book on Mongolia.**M** The travel section is over there, near the window.**W** Thank you.**M** When are you going?**W** Er ... now.**M** I mean, to Mongolia.**W** Oh, I'm not. I just enjoy reading about these places.**Exercise 4** page 53

- 1 police station 2 gym 3 train station
4 shopping centre 5 zoo 6 park 7 car park
8 hospital 9 bank 10 library

Exercise 5 page 53

- 1 Mosque 2 Airport 3 station 4 hotel 5 Park

Exercise 6 page 53

- 1 c 2 b 3 a 4 a 5 c

Exercise 7 2.30 page 53

- 1 There's 2 There isn't 3 There's 4 There isn't
5 There aren't 6 There are 7 There's 8 There isn't

Transcript

Girl Do you like the town you live in?

Boy Yes, I do. It isn't a very big town, and there isn't a lot to do, really. Not for people like me. For example, the gym is great. It's right in the centre of town, opposite the town hall. But it costs about £100 a month to be a member! And it hasn't got a swimming pool. In fact, there isn't a swimming pool in my town. You have to go 20 kilometres to the next town to have a swim! But at least there's a park, so I can play football with my friends. It isn't in the centre – it's on the edge of town, next to the station. (I mean the bus station – there aren't any trains!) I don't live close to the park, so it's a long walk ...

G What about shops? Is it a good place to go shopping?

B Well, there aren't many shops in the centre of town. There are a few banks and a small supermarket – and that's it! Nearly all of the shops are in the shopping centre and that's outside the town. There's a cinema inside the shopping centre and I go there quite often. Our house is between the town and the shopping centre, so it's easy for me to go there by bus. The bus stop is very near my house. But the bus is expensive ...

G Stop! It sounds like a terrible place to live!

Exercise 8 page 53

Opposites behind / in front of; in or inside / outside

Mean the same close to / near (also in / inside)

Exercise 9 2.30 page 53

- 1 It's opposite the gym. 2 It's next to the bus station.
3 It's outside town. 4 There's a cinema inside the shopping centre.
5 He lives between the town and the shopping centre.
6 It's close to his house.

Transcript

See exercise 7.

Exercise 10 page 53

- 2 Is there a swimming pool? Is it public or private?
3 Is there a shopping centre? Is it small or large?
4 Is there an airport? Is it inside or outside town?
5 Are there any parks? Are they busy or quiet?

5B Grammar

Comparatives

Exercise 1 page 54

Photo A is Los Angeles and photo B is New York.

Exercise 3 page 54

- 1 longer 2 bigger 3 sunnier 4 wider
5 more comfortable 6 better 7 further

Exercise 4 page 54

2 Los Angeles is quieter than New York. 3 New York has narrower streets than Los Angeles. 4 New York has taller buildings than Los Angeles. 5 New York has a worse climate than Los Angeles. 6 New York is nearer for Europeans.

For further practice of comparatives:

Grammar Builder 5B page 132

- 1 1 earlier 2 quicker 3 more excited 4 sunnier
5 wetter 6 more popular 7 kinder 8 more expensive
9 larger 10 more exciting 11 more polluted 12 warmer
- 2 1 better 2 bigger 3 friendlier 4 older 5 younger
6 safer 7 farther/further 8 more popular
- 3 2 Joey is taller than Carly. 3 Carly is richer than Joey.
4 Joey is more popular than Carly. 5 Joey is more hard-working than Carly. 6 Carly is older than Joey. 7 Carly is shorter than Joey.

Exercise 5 page 54

- 2 Which is more polluted, Warsaw or Mexico City?
3 Which is more expensive, Prague or Tokyo? 4 Which is sunnier, Cairo or Istanbul?
5 Which is safer, Cape Town or New York? 6 Which is more crowded, Athens or Lisbon?
7 Which is drier, London or Milan?

Exercise 7 2.31 page 54

- 1 Moscow 2 Mexico City 3 Tokyo 4 Cairo
5 New York 6 Athens 7 Milan

Transcript

- 1 Moscow is larger than Paris.
2 Mexico City is more polluted than Warsaw.
3 Tokyo is more expensive than Prague.
4 Cairo is sunnier than Istanbul.
5 New York is safer than Cape Town.
6 Athens is more crowded than Lisbon.
7 London is drier than Milan.

Exercise 8 page 54

- 1 The afternoons are often sunnier than the mornings.
2 The shops in the town centre are more expensive than the shops in the shopping centre. 3 I enjoy maths, but I'm better at English. 4 The houses are more expensive and larger in the west of the city. 5 Big cities are always more exciting than small cities.

5C Listening

Town or country?

Exercise 1 page 55

Town crowd, hill, lake, office block, shopping centre, street, traffic, wood **Country** farm, field, hill, lake, valley, village, wood

Exercise 2 page 55

Top photo: field, hill, valley, village, wood
Bottom photo: crowd, street, shopping centre, traffic

Exercise 3 page 55

- 1 safer 2 quieter 3 cleaner 4 friendlier 5 easier
6 easier 7 more exciting 8 better 9 bigger

Exercise 4 2.32 page 55

- 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b

Transcript

- 1 So, here we are in London. There are lots of things to see and you can find all the information you need about them

in the packs that I handed out earlier. You've got three hours now to explore. Please be back on the coach by 12 so that we can drive to the restaurant for lunch at 1. You can leave anything that you don't need on the coach. The driver always locks the doors so no one can get in. Now any questions before I let you go?

2 Man The train is very crowded, isn't it?

Woman Yes, but at least we've got seats.

M Yes, that's true. It's usually impossible to get a seat in the rush hour. I often have to stand. So let's relax and have some food.

W But there isn't any food. They haven't got any more sandwiches in the buffet car so we can't get anything to eat. I'm really hungry.

M Well, there's a café at the station. We can eat there, when we arrive.

W No, the station café is closed now. But it doesn't matter. We can eat at home. I don't mind cooking.

3 Tourist Excuse me. Where's the castle?

Local It's at the top of the hill.

T Would you recommend it?

L Definitely! There are lovely views from the top. But it's quite a difficult climb. It takes nearly an hour from here.

T Well, that's OK. It's only midday.

L And you have to be careful in this rain.

T Really?

L Yes. When the path is wet, it can be dangerous. A lot of people fall and hurt themselves.

T Oh. Well maybe I'll go to the museum instead. Where's that?

L It's over there.

4 There are houses for sale in both villages. The villages are quite similar, but South Milton is bigger than Upton. Upton, however, is quite a bit more expensive. Both villages are very pretty and are lovely places to live. But there is one house which I think you would really like in Upton. It costs £200,000, which is really cheap. The owners want to move quickly, so why don't you make an offer? You won't regret it.

Exercise 5 2.33 page 55

1 B 2 D 3 C 4 A

Transcript

- 1 I love it here. You can walk in the woods along the river near my village. An advantage of living in the country is that the people are much friendlier and there's less crime. We don't even lock the car at night. And we often leave the house unlocked when we are out during the day. I think people should move out of the cities and find a better life in the country.
- 2 Why are so many people moving out of cities to find a new life in the country? Is it because life is so much easier in the country than in the town, because it's quieter and less stressful, and houses are much cheaper? Or are there other reasons? Listen to *In the Country* tonight at eight, when we interview people who are thinking of moving and ask them why.
- 3 It's really lovely where I live. It's very pretty and there are trees and a hill just behind my house. If you like a quiet life, it's a really great place to live. But one disadvantage is that life is a bit boring here. There isn't much going on in the village and there aren't many young people around. So, I often go into the city at weekends with my friends. It isn't far and there's always something to do there. One day, I'd like to move away from here.

4 There's lots to do, of course, much more than in the country. It's good that you can go to the cinema and theatre. And there are lots of shops. But to be honest, I hardly ever go to the cinema or theatre. I prefer watching DVDs at home. And I hate shopping. What I really hate about the town is that it's very busy, very noisy and quite dirty. I'd rather live somewhere cleaner and more peaceful.

5D Grammar

Superlatives

Exercise 1 page 56

1 plane 2 train 3 ship 4 tram

Exercise 2 2.34 page 56

Exercise 3 page 56

1 the quickest 2 the easiest 3 the most convenient
4 the best 5 the worst

Exercise 4 page 56

in

Exercise 5 page 56

1 the sunniest 2 the hottest 3 the furthest
4 the largest 5 the wettest 6 the most expensive

Exercise 6 2.35 page 56

1 Las Vegas 2 Athens 3 Reykjavik 4 Shanghai
5 Bergen 6 Singapore

Transcript

- 1 The sunniest city in the USA is Las Vegas.
- 2 The hottest city in Europe is Athens.
- 3 The furthest capital city from the Equator is Reykjavik.
- 4 The largest city in Asia is Shanghai.
- 5 The wettest city in Europe is Bergen.
- 6 The most expensive city in the world is Singapore.

For further practice of superlatives:

Grammar Builder 5D page 132

- 5 1 the quietest 2 the sunniest 3 the hottest
4 most polluted 5 the scariest 6 the most
expensive 7 the furthest / the farthest 8 the slowest
- 6 2 I think ... is the most beautiful actress in the world.
3 I think ... is the worst singer in my country.
4 I think ... is the best day of the week.
5 I think ... is the easiest subject at school.
- 8 2 Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
3 Platinum is the most expensive metal in the world.
4 Berlin is the biggest city in Germany.
5 The Amazon is the widest river in the world.
6 Mosquitoes are the most dangerous animals in
the world.
- 9 1 What's the best football club in the world?
2 Who's the most famous comedian in the world?
3 What's the funniest programme on TV?
4 Who's the best-looking actor in America?
5 What's the worst pop group in the world?

Exercise 7

page 56

(Possible answers)

2 Trams are more convenient than buses, but taxis are the most convenient. 3 The underground is slower than motorbikes, but buses are the slowest. 4 Trams are more expensive than buses, but taxis are the most expensive. 5 Motorbikes are dirtier than bikes, but cars are the dirtiest. 6 Bicycles are cheaper than buses, but walking is the cheapest.

Exercise 8

page 56

- 2 Who's the funniest comedian on TV?
- 3 What's the scariest form of transport?
- 4 Who's the best-looking actor in the world?
- 5 What's the best way to travel to the UK?
- 6 What's the best way to get round in your town or city?

5E Word Skills

Words that go together

Exercise 2

page 57

The man is trying to run between two underground stations faster than the tube train makes the journey.

Exercise 3

page 57

- 1 ticket
- 2 train
- 3 the stairs
- 4 taxi
- 5 bus
- 6 bicycle
- 7 way
- 8 road

Exercise 4

page 57

- 1 rides
- 2 get in
- 3 get off
- 4 go, take
- 5 buy, get on
- 6 miss, Wait for
- 7 cross
- 8 drives
- 9 Go up
- 10 loses

Exercise 5

page 57

When the train arrives at the station, and the doors open, you get off the train ... When you arrive at the second station, you have to catch the same train.

Exercise 6

page 57

- 1 at
- 2 at
- 3 –
- 4 in
- 5 in

5F Reading

Unusual cities

Exercise 2

page 58

- A 2 and 4 B 3 C 1

Exercise 3

page 58

- 1 A 2 A 3 C 4 B 5 C 6 B 7 A

Exercise 4

page 58

Text A 1.7 million: the city's population; 400 metres: the furthest distance to a bus stop; 50 square metres: the green space per person
Text B 2,000: the city's population; 70: the age of the city in years; 300 km: the length of the roads in the city
Text C eight million: Cairo's population; 60,000: Manshiyat Nasser's population; 90%: the percentage of Cairo's rubbish that is recycled

Exercise 5

page 58

- 1 north
- 2 east
- 3 south
- 4, 5, 6 (in any order: South America, Asia, Africa)

Exercise 6

page 58

2 north, Africa 3 south 4 south, Europe

5 west, North America 6 west

5G Speaking

Asking for and giving directions

Exercise 2

page 60

- 1 Go to the end of the road.
- 2 Go past the bank.
- 3 Take the first left.
- 4 Go under the bridge.

- 5 Go along King's Rd.
- 6 Turn right at the crossroads.
- 7 Go straight on.
- 8 Cross the road.

Exercise 3

page 60

The museum is 2.

Exercise 4

page 60

(Possible answers)

Where's the hospital? Go along Victoria Street, under the bridge. Take the first right. Then turn left at the traffic lights. Go to the end of Queens Street and turn right. Go left at the roundabout and go past the traffic lights. The hospital is on the right.

Where's the swimming pool? Go along Victoria Street, under the bridge. Go to the end of the road. Turn right into Kings Road. Go straight on to the roundabout. Take the first left at the roundabout. Go past the traffic lights to the next roundabout. Turn left at the roundabout into East Road. The swimming pool is on your left, next to the gym.

Where's the car park? Go along Victoria Street, under the bridge. Take the first right. Go to the end of the road. Turn left into North Street. The car park is on your right.

Where's the post office? Go along Victoria Street, under the bridge. Take the first left. Go to the end of the road. Turn right. Go to the end of the road. The post office is opposite.

For further practice of in the street vocabulary:

Vocabulary Builder 5G

page 119

- 1 1 crossroads 2 traffic lights 3 pavement
- 4 bridge 5 lamp post 6 bus shelter
- 7 pedestrian crossing 8 T-junction 9 roundabout
- 10 cycle lane 11 phone box 12 square

- 2 1 bus shelter 2 pedestrian crossing 3 bridges
- 4 traffic lights 5 cycle lane 6 phone box
- 7 pavement

Exercise 5

page 60

- 1 the restaurant
- 2 the gym
- 3 the cinema

- 4 the supermarket

Transcript

1 Boy Excuse me. Can you direct me to the ... ?

Man Yes, of course. Go along Victoria Street, under the bridge. Take the first left and go to the end of the road. Turn right and go past the department store to the end of Park Street. It's on the corner, on your left.

B So, turn left after the bridge, go to the end of the road. Turn right and it's at the end of Park Street on the left.

M That's it. You've got it.

B Many thanks.

M You're welcome.

2 Girl Excuse me. I'm new here. Where is the ... ?

Man Go straight on, under the bridge. Go to the end of Victoria Street and turn right. Turn left at the roundabout, and then take the second left. It's next to the swimming pool, on your left.

G Could you repeat that, please?

M Go straight on. At end of Victoria Street, turn right. Then turn left at the roundabout, go straight on, and turn left again at another roundabout. It's on your left, next to the swimming pool.

G Thanks very much.

M You're welcome.

3 Boy Excuse me. Can you tell me where the ... is, please?

Man Certainly. Go along Victoria Street, under the bridge and take the first right. Go past the pedestrian crossing. Then —

B Sorry. What does pedestrian crossing mean?

M Oh, it's where people can walk safely across the road. So go past that, and turn left at the traffic lights. There's a school on the corner. It's next to the school.

B So, under the bridge, turn right, then right again at the traffic lights?

M No, left at the traffic lights. Then it's on your right, next to the school.

B Thank you.

M No problem.

4 Girl Excuse me. Can you direct me to the ... ?

Man Yes. Go straight along Victoria Street, under the bridge. Then take the first right and go—

G Sorry, could you speak more slowly, please?

M Yes, sorry. Go straight along Victoria Street, under the bridge. Then turn right and go to the end of the road. Turn right again and go over the bridge.

G Over the bridge?

M Yes, over the bridge. And it's on your right, opposite the shopping centre.

G Thanks very much.

M Not at all.

Exercise 6  **page 60** 1 Speaker 1 doesn't use any of the questions.

2 Could you repeat that, please?

3 What does pedestrian crossing mean?

4 Could you speak more slowly, please?

Transcript

See exercise 5.

5H Writing

An article

Exercise 1 **page 61**

(Possible answer)

It looks more attractive / uglier than my town. It's probably more boring / exciting. My town is more modern / historic than Beverley. I think it's cleaner / more polluted than my town. It also looks quieter / more crowded than my town.

For further practice of describing towns and cities: **Vocabulary Builder 5H** **page 119**

3 boring / exciting, clean / polluted, crowded / quiet, historic / modern

Exercise 3 **page 61**

1 d 2 a 3 c

Exercise 4 **page 61**

e

Exercise 5 **page 61**

tea room, café, sandwich shop, restaurant, pub, fish and chip shop

Exercise 7 **page 61**

(Possible answers)

Eating out There is a wide choice of places to eat out, from the cheap to the very expensive.

Entertainment ... is well known for its theatres and famous concert hall.

Getting around It's easy to travel around when you're in ...

History ... is an ancient city with a long and interesting history.

Places of interest There are many exciting things to do and see in ...

Places to stay From inexpensive B&Bs to luxury hotels, there's accommodation for everyone.

Shopping For people who love shopping, ... has a lot to offer.

Exercise 8 **page 61**

(Model answer)

Exeter is a city in the south-west of England. It has a population of 125,000. It's very popular with tourists. They come to explore the city's cathedral, museums, art galleries and beautiful old streets.

It's easy to travel around when you're in Exeter. There are buses and plenty of taxis. It's easy to cycle and many tourists like to explore the city on foot.

From inexpensive rooms for backpackers to luxury hotels, there's accommodation in Exeter for everyone.

Most visitors stay in the centre of the city near the main attractions. This is the most interesting part of the city.

Map of resources**6A Vocabulary**

Student's Book, pages 58–59; Workbook, page 64

Photocopiable: 6A (Wild animals)

6B Grammar

Student's Book, page 64; Workbook, page 65

Photocopiable: 6B (Past simple (affirmative): regular)

6C Listening

Student's Book, page 65; Workbook, page 66

6D Grammar

Student's Book, page 66; Workbook, page 67

Photocopiable: 6D (Past simple: *be* and *can*)**6E Word Skills**

Student's Book, page 67; Workbook, page 68

6F Reading

Student's Book, pages 68–69; Workbook, page 69

6G Speaking

Student's Book, page 70; Workbook, page 70

6H Writing

Student's Book, page 71; Workbook, page 71

Culture 6

Student's Book, page 113

DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 6

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 6**End of unit**

Unit Review: Workbook, pages 72–73

Photocopiable: Grammar Review

Photocopiable: Vocabulary Review

Exam Skills Trainer 3: Student's Book, pages 72–73

Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 6

6A Vocabulary**Wild animals****Exercise 1** page 62

- A whale B tiger C bear D eagle E monkey
F hippo

Exercise 2 3.02 page 62**Exercise 3** page 62

- a a bear, a crocodile, an elephant, a frog, a giraffe,
a gorilla, a hippo, a kangaroo, a lion, a monkey, a snake,
a spider, a tiger, a wolf
b a crocodile, a dolphin, a frog, a hippo, a shark, (a snake),
a whale
c a bee, a butterfly, an eagle

Exercise 4 page 62**Insects** bee, butterfly**Birds** eagle**Fish** shark**Mammals** bear, dolphin, elephant, giraffe, gorilla, hippo,
kangaroo, lion, monkey, tiger, whale, wolf**Reptiles** crocodile, snake**Others** frog, spider**Exercise 5** page 62**Exercise 7** 3.03 page 63

- 1 It's a butterfly's wing. 2 It's a frog's foot. 3 It's a snake's eye. 4 It's a wolf's ears. 5 It's a shark's tail.
6 It's a crocodile's teeth. 7 It's a gorilla's mouth. 8 It's a spider's legs. 9 It's a lion's paw.

Exercise 8 page 63

- 1 more dangerous 2 slower 3 heaviest 4 tallest
5 more intelligent 6 bigger

Exercise 9 3.04 page 63

- 1 F 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 F

Transcript

Look over there, in the water. Can you see the crocodiles? They are amazing animals. But they're dangerous – very dangerous. I mean, people think sharks are dangerous animals, but they aren't really – they only kill about five people a year in the whole world. But crocodiles kill hundreds! They attack people in the water, of course. But they also attack people on land. They can run very fast – about 17 kilometres an hour. That's faster than a lot of people can run! So let's stay behind this wall. OK, any questions? No? Then let's move on. Here we are. Here are the tigers. Look at them! They're beautiful animals. And they're big, too – bigger and heavier than all the other big cats, like lions and jaguars. An adult male tiger can weigh 300 kilograms. That's about the same as you, your brother, your mum and your dad, all put together! OK, next, it's the giraffes. Here they are – they're the tallest animals in the world. Adult giraffes are about five metres tall. That's perfect for eating the leaves of trees. Of course, it's more difficult to drink water from a lake or river when you're five metres tall ... but they manage. And here we have our gorillas. There are three of them – but we can only see two at the moment. Gorillas are very intelligent animals. Some gorillas can understand a thousand different words! So they're much more intelligent than dolphins, for example. As you can see, gorillas are taller and heavier than humans. However, when they are born, they're smaller than humans – they only weigh about two kilos. Human babies usually weigh about three and a half kilos or more.

Exercise 10 3.04 page 63

- 1 They kill about five people a year.
2 It can move about seventeen kilometres an hour on land.
3 It's 300 kilograms.
4 It's about five metres.
5 They can understand about a thousand words.
6 It's about two kilos.

Transcript

See exercise 9.

Exercise 1 page 63

- 1 Which is uglier, a frog or a snake?
- 2 Which is more beautiful, a butterfly's wings or a tiger's face?
- 3 Which is more frightening, a snake or a spider?
- 4 Which is more intelligent, a bee or a bear?
- 5 Which is rarer, a tiger or a wolf?
- 6 Which is stronger, a crocodile's mouth or a whale's tale?

6B Grammar

Past simple (affirmative): regular

Exercise 1 3.05 page 64

entertainer, photographer, explorer

Exercise 2 page 64

- a worked, sailed b loved, caused c studied, tried
d travelled, stopped

Exercise 3 3.06 page 64

When a verb ends in /t/ or /d/, we pronounce the extra syllable as /ɪd/.

Exercise 4 page 64

/endɪd/ /ɪrvd/ /stɑ:tɪd/ /stɒpt/ /'trævɪld/ /weɪtɪd/
/wɔ:kɪt/ /wɒntɪd/ /wɒtʃt/

Exercise 5 page 64

- 1 worked 2 wanted 3 moved 4 lived 5 studied
6 married 7 loved 8 planned 9 trained 10 started
11 travelled 12 arrived 13 described

For further practice of the past simple affirmative of regular verbs: Grammar Builder 6B page 134

- 1 1 arrived 2 planned 3 worked 4 stopped
5 waited 6 travelled 7 lived 8 watched
9 married 10 moved
- 2 1 travelled 2 lived; moved 3 stopped
4 arrived 5 waited 6 planned 7 worked
8 married; watched
- 3 1 moved 2 married 3 started 4 lived
5 worked 6 wanted 7 stopped 8 travelled
9 visited 10 described
- 4 2 We visited relatives ...
3 I worked very hard ...
4 I started at this school ...
5 I watched a great programme on TV ...
6 It rained a lot ...

Exercise 6 page 64

- 2 travelled 3 waited 4 lived 5 stopped 6 chatted

Exercise 7 page 64

- 1 a few minutes ago 2 an hour ago 3 three hours ago
4 last night 5 yesterday morning 6 last week
7 last month 8 two months ago 9 last summer
10 ten years ago

6C Listening

Missing sounds

Exercise 1 page 65

(Example answer)

Some people are camping, but their camp is empty. We can't see them. A bear is looking at their tent. There's a sleeping bag inside the tent. The bear pushed over the chair. I can see some rocks.

Exercise 2 page 65

- 1 Tell 2 rely 3 Take 4 feed 5 keep 6 walk
7 run 8 look 9 climb

Exercise 3 page 65

- 1 best 2 old 3 next 4 cold 5 must 6 last

Exercise 4 3.07 page 65

Exercise 5 3.08 page 65

We know they are in the past because of the words *yesterday* and *this morning*.

Exercise 6 3.09 page 65

- 1 present simple; *every evening* means it is a habit.
2 either; there is no time reference.
3 either; there is no time reference.
4 past simple; the time reference is *last year*.
5 either; there is no time reference.
6 present simple; *every day* means it is a habit.
7 past simple; the time reference is *last weekend*.
8 past simple; the time reference is *for many years*.

Transcript

- 1 Mum and Beth cook dinner every evening.
2 We both study drama at college.
3 I walk to school.
4 Fred stopped doing karate last year.
5 I crossed the road and walked into the supermarket.
6 They travel to work by car every day.
7 Tom arrived Tuesday of last week.
8 They lived together for many years in the USA.

Exercise 7 3.10 page 65

- 1 E 2 B 3 C 4 A

Transcript

- 1 Last summer my friend Liam and I visited a national park. There's a beautiful lake there with woods all around it. One day, we decided to swim in the lake, so we changed into our swimming trunks behind some trees. After swimming for about 30 minutes, Liam returned to the trees. Then he shouted to me, 'Our clothes? Where are they? They aren't here!' We looked for them everywhere. Then we noticed two boys in the wood – with our clothes in their hands! I shouted to them and they dropped our clothes and hurried away into the wood. Liam wanted to catch them, but I stopped him.
- 2 Last year my friend Sam and I visited Yellowstone National Park. When we arrived, we pitched our tent near a lovely river and decided to sleep for an hour. About 30 minutes later a roar interrupted our sleep. 'That sounds like a bear,' whispered Joe. I agreed. Bears can be dangerous, so we carefully opened the tent, looked around, then we walked quietly to the car. We closed the car doors and locked them.

Two minutes later, a large bear appeared from the trees. It walked to our tent and looked inside. Then it destroyed the tent with its big paws! We waited quietly in the car. After about five minutes, the bear returned to the woods, and we returned home in the car – without our tent and sleeping bags!

- 3 I live in a village in the mountains. Last spring, my friend Emma and I decided to trek over the mountains to a youth hostel in another village. We started at nine in the morning. But at lunch time it started to rain and clouds covered the mountain. We arrived at a cave and waited there. When it stopped raining, we walked on. But we followed the wrong path! We stopped again. ‘Where are we?’ asked Emma. ‘I don’t know,’ I replied. ‘I think we’re lost. I haven’t got a compass with me, but I’ve got a map app on my phone. We can see where we are.’ So we opened the app and used it to find our way back to the path. We soon arrived at the village and stayed at the youth hostel.
- 4 Last June, I visited a safari park with my family. You have to drive round the park and you mustn’t stop or open the windows. Well, we followed the road and looked at all the amazing wild animals: elephants, hippos, monkeys, tigers and gorillas. Then suddenly, the car slowed down and stopped. Dad tried to start it again. ‘What’s the matter with the car?’ asked Mum. ‘I can’t start it,’ replied Dad. ‘There isn’t any petrol.’ Then my little brother noticed some lions. ‘Look, Dad, they’re coming to the car!’ he cried. ‘Don’t worry,’ replied Dad. ‘They can’t get into the car.’ The lions walked round the car and then returned to their family. Luckily, one of the safari park wardens noticed our car soon afterwards and rescued us.

Exercise 8 3.11 page 65

- 1 behind 2 noticed 3 Last, friend 4 closed
5 followed 6 opened 7 slowed 9 noticed

6D Grammar

Past simple: *be* and *can*

Exercise 1 3.12 page 66

Molly was in Cape Town (in South Africa). She saw giraffes, elephants, zebras, hippos and lions.

Exercise 2 page 66

- 1 were 2 wasn’t 3 Was 4 was 5 weren’t 6 Could
7 couldn’t

For further practice of the past simple *be* and *can*: Grammar Builder 6D page 134

- 5 1 weren’t 2 were 3 weren’t 4 was 5 was
6 wasn’t 7 was 8 wasn’t
- 6 2 was 3 weren’t 4 was 5 was 6 weren’t
7 wasn’t 8 was
- 7 2 Was Harry at home last night? Yes, he was.
3 Were Sue and Simon at school yesterday? No,
they weren’t
- 4 Was Martin in town at three o’clock yesterday
afternoon? Yes, he was.
- 5 Was Rachel at the supermarket at midday on
Saturday? Yes, she was.
- 6 Were Tom and Emma in the school canteen at
breaktime? No, they weren’t.
- 7 Was Danny at the doctor’s yesterday morning?
No, he wasn’t
- 8 Was Miranda at the pop concert on Saturday
evening? Yes, she was.
- 8 1 could 2 couldn’t 3 couldn’t 4 couldn’t
5 could 6 couldn’t 7 couldn’t 8 couldn’t

Exercise 3 page 66

- 1 weren’t 2 was 3 Were, wasn’t 4 were 5 wasn’t
6 Was, were, was, wasn’t

Exercise 4 page 66

- 2 Josh couldn’t swim because the sea was very rough.
3 I couldn’t go to school because I wasn’t well.
4 Liam couldn’t finish his burger because he was full.
5 We couldn’t put up the tent because it was too windy.
6 Harriet couldn’t sleep because she wasn’t tired.

Exercise 5 page 66

- 1 were 2 weren’t 3 couldn’t 4 Was 5 wasn’t
6 wasn’t 7 was 8 couldn’t 9 could 10 weren’t
11 Was 12 was 13 couldn’t

Exercise 6 page 66

- 2 Could you count to ten in English when you were seven?
3 Could you write your name when you were three?
4 Could you talk when you were two?
5 Could you walk when you were one?
6 Could you ride a bike when you were six?

Exercise 7 page 66

6E Word Skills

Prepositions of movement and place

Exercise 2 page 67

Exercise 3 page 67

- a into b along c away from d round e down
f across g to h onto i out of j over k under
l through m off n towards o past p up
along the usual path; across a field; into the jungle; return
to his workmates; through the trees; over tree trunks;
under bushes; along it

Exercise 4 page 67

- a in the Amazon rainforest; in the forest; in a tree
- b on the ground
- c by the river

Exercise 5 page 67

- 1 past, over 2 in 3 through, up 4 across 5 on
 6 out of, into 7 up / over, around / through 8 by

6F Reading**Stranger than fiction?****Exercise 1** page 68

- 1 A myth is a story that some people believe, but that isn't actually true.
 2 People were wrong about some strange animals being myths. They were actually real.

Exercise 2 page 68

- 1 D 2 C 3 B 4 A

Exercise 3 page 68

- A T B F C F

Exercise 4 page 68

- 1 b 2 b 3 c 4 a

Exercise 5 page 69

- 1 scientists 2 soldier 3 journalist 4 explorer
 5 politician 6 fishermen 7 pilot 8 sailors

Exercise 6 page 69

(Possible answers)

The Loch Ness Monster looks like a dragon or a dinosaur. It's big and it lives in the water.

Bigfoot looks like a gorilla. It's about the same size as a gorilla. It lives in forests with large trees.

The giant anaconda is a huge snake. It lives in rivers in tropical countries.

Exercise 7 page 69

- Focus attention on the questions. Students do their research on the internet and then share the information they have found with the class.

KEY

(Example answers)

There are a lot of stories about the Loch Ness Monster. It lives in a lake in Scotland according to the stories. There are photos and videos of the monster on the internet. There are a lot of stories about Bigfoot. It lives in the forests of North America according to the stories. There are photos and videos of the creature on the internet. There are a lot of stories about the giant anaconda. It lives in South America, according to the stories. There are photos and videos of this snake on the internet. Anacondas are real animals, but nobody knows if the Giant Anaconda is real.

6G Speaking**Photo description****Exercise 2** page 70

Photo on the left: cloud, grass, ground, mountains, sky, sunrise, tree

Photo on the right: cloud, grass, ground, mountain, rock, sky, tree, water

For further practice of the weather: Vocabulary**Builder 6G** page 120

- 1 A rainy B cloudy C stormy D windy E hot F warm G cold H snowy I sunny
 2 A It is hot and sunny. B It is windy and stormy. C It is cold and snowy.

Exercise 3 3.14 page 70

sunrise, ground, mountains, clouds, trees, grass

Transcript

This photo shows a woman in a beautiful place in the countryside. I think it's sunrise. The woman is sitting on the ground – she's facing the sun. She's in the foreground. In the distance, I can see mountains and clouds. On the right of the photo, there are trees. On the left, I can see grass, I think. And at the top of the photo is the sun. It's very bright! It looks like a warm and sunny morning.

Exercise 4 3.14 page 70

- 2 in 3 in 4 on 5 at

Transcript

See exercise 3.

Exercise 5 page 70

(Possible answer)

This photo shows some people camping. In the background, I see trees and some mountains with snow on the peaks. In the foreground, on the left, there's a car. A young woman is taking something out of the car boot. In the centre a man and two women are putting up a tent. On the right, I can see a guitar and some camping equipment. A man is opening the guitar case. Another man is walking towards the tent.

Exercise 6 3.15 page 70**Transcript**

In this photo, we can see some men and women on a camping holiday. On the left, a woman is standing next to a car. In the centre, there's a yellow tent. A woman with long hair is walking past the tent. On the right, a man is sitting on a rock. He's facing the car. In the distance, there are mountains. It's a sunny day. On the right, we can see trees. It's a beautiful place for camping, in my opinion.

Exercise 7 page 70

- A facing (the tree) B lying (on the ground) C standing D climbing (up) E walking F looking up G running H sitting (on)

Exercise 8 page 70

(Possible answers)

Photo 1 She's facing the sun. She's sitting on the ground.

Photo 2 She's standing next to the car. She's / He's walking. He's sitting on a rock.

Exercise 10 page 70

(Possible answers)

Photo 1 In this photo, we can see a beautiful mountain scene. In the centre, there's a big lake. On the left, there's a man. He's sitting on a rock and he's facing the sun. I think he's looking at the mountains in the distance. At the top of the photo, the sky is blue and there are white clouds.

Photo 2 In this photo, we can see a beautiful sunset. In the distance, there are mountains and clouds. On the left, there are some trees and a small stream. On the right, there's an orange tent and a man. The man is sitting on the ground and looking down at the fire.

6H Writing

A postcard

Exercise 1 page 71

Photo 1 trek **Photo 2** kayak **Photo 3** abseil

For further practice of adventure holiday activities: Vocabulary Builder 6H page 120

4 A bungee jump B climb C go caving D kite surf
E cycle F swim G watch wildlife H windsurf

Exercise 2 page 71

Postcard 1 trek, explore, surf

Postcard 2 kayak, abseil, cycle

Exercise 3 page 71

- 1 M: Vietnam; T: Canada 2 M: in a hostel; T: at a campsite
3 M: very hot and sunny; T: OK (cold and windy yesterday, better today) 4 M: trekked and explored; T: kayaked
5 M: surfing; T: cycling

Exercise 4 page 71

Postcard 1 (Milla) I'm having a great time. We're staying in a hostel. We arrived three days ago. Yesterday we trekked ... Tomorrow we're travelling to the beach ...

Postcard 2 (Tom) We're staying at a campsite near a lake in Ontario. Yesterday we kayaked down a river. Today I abseiled down a cliff. Tomorrow we're cycling to the nearest village.

Exercise 5 page 71

I'm having a great time in Vietnam.

This is my second day in Canada. The weather is very hot and sunny / OK.

I've only got three more days here. Wish you were here. Say hello to Emma. See you soon.

Exercise 7 page 71

(Model answer)

Hi Anna,

This is my third day in Scotland. We're staying in a hostel in the mountains. The weather is quite cold, but the country is beautiful.

The day before yesterday we went kayaking. It was scary but it was also very exciting! Then in the evening, we went to a pub with traditional music and dancing.

Yesterday, we went trekking in the mountains. It was a sunny day and we saw some fantastic views.

Tomorrow, we're going to visit my aunt and uncle in Edinburgh. We're staying there for a week and then we're flying back home.

Wish you were here!

Bye for now!

Lucy

3 Exam Skills Trainer

Reading

Exercise 1 page 72

1 C 2 E 3 B 4 A 5 D

Exercise 2 page 72

1 D 2 C 3 B

Listening

Exercise 3 page 72

	similar meaning	opposite meaning
dirty	polluted	clean
noisy	loud	quiet
fast	quick	slow
short	—	long
dangerous	—	safe
stop	wait	start

Exercise 4 3.16 page 72

1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T

Transcript

Stephen What do you think of the new tram system?

Myra It's good! I lived in a city with trams when I was a child. I always really liked travelling on them. And the traffic here is better now.

S Really? I'm not so sure. I mean, buses and cars can move around things in the road, but trams have to travel on tracks, you know, like a train, in more or less straight lines. They can't suddenly turn left or right. Yesterday I was on a tram and it just stopped for five minutes because there was something in front of it. So slow!

M Hmm, maybe, but there are so many other good things about trams, like they're cleaner than buses and cars. We need clean transport here! The air is so dirty!

S Yes, but bikes are the cleanest form of transport! More people should ride bikes. And talking of bikes, trams are actually dangerous for bikes.

M Why?

S Because it's easy for the wheels of a bike to go down into the tracks in the road, and sometimes it can be difficult to get the bike out again. That's really dangerous when you're in the middle of a busy road.

M OK, but they're definitely quieter than buses and cars.

S Quieter! They make that horrible 'squeal' noise when they turn. 'Squeeeal!'

M Ow, yes, OK, that's true. Too loud! Stop it! Stop!

Use of English

Exercise 5 page 73

- On the board, write: *I'm going ___ the bus station.* Elicit
 - 1 a motorbike
 - 2 a car
 - 3 a bus
 - 4 your way
 - 5 Istanbul
 - 6 Germany

Exercise 6 page 73

1 C 2 B 3 B 4 A 5 C 6 B 7 A 8 B

Speaking

Exercise 7 page 73

place	time	weather	activity
bridge	afternoon	cloud	relax
city	evening	cold	sit
ground	sunrise	snow	travel
park	sunset		

Exercise 8 page 73

(Example answers)

This is a city scene. It's very cloudy and snowy, so it could be autumn or winter. A train is crossing a bridge. Maybe people on the train are travelling to or from work.

This is a park in a city. There are some trees and a lake. It's probably afternoon. The weather is sunny, but there are a few clouds. Some people are sitting on the ground and relaxing.

Writing

Exercise 9 page 73

1 hot 2 bad 3 noisy 4 tallest 5 best 6 fantastic

Exercise 10 page 73

(Example answer)

Dear Kev,

Hello from York, England! I'm sitting in Rowntree Park, near the River Ouse. It's a beautiful sunny day. The temperature is about 18°C and there are only a few clouds.

I'm staying in a hotel in the town centre. It's clean and comfortable. I had an amazing day yesterday. I walked on the ancient wall around the city. The views were fantastic, and I watched the sunset from one of the towers.

Tomorrow, I'm planning to take a boat tour on the river and visit part of an old castle called Clifford's Tower.

I hope you're having a good holiday!

Map of resources**7A Vocabulary**

Student's Book, pages 74–75; Workbook, page 74

Photocopiable: 7A (Computing)

7B Grammar

Student's Book, page 76; Workbook, page 75

Photocopiable: 7B (Past simple (affirmative): irregular)

7C Listening

Student's Book, page 77; Workbook, page 76

7D Grammar

Student's Book, page 78; Workbook, page 77

Photocopiable: 7D (Past simple (negative and interrogative))

7E Word Skills

Student's Book, page 79; Workbook, page 78

7F Reading

Student's Book, pages 80–81; Workbook, page 79

7G Speaking

Student's Book, page 82; Workbook, page 80

Photocopiable: Functional Language Practice (Asking about products and prices in a shop)

7H Writing

Student's Book, page 83; Workbook, page 81

Culture 7

Student's Book, page 114

DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 7

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 7**End of unit**

Unit Review: Workbook, pages 76–77

Photocopiable: Grammar Review

Exam Skills Trainer 4: Workbook, pages 84–85

Cumulative Review 1–7: Workbook, pages 114–115

Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 7

7A Vocabulary**Computing****Exercise 2** page 74

- 1 computer, keyboard, mouse, monitor, speakers, webcam 2 laptop, router 3 tablet, charger
4 headphones 5 printer 6 memory stick

Exercise 3 3.17 page 74**Exercise 4** page 75

- 2 post 3 upload 4 download 5 delete 6 connect to 7 enter 8 surf 9 print (delete / download / scan / upload)

Exercise 5 3.18 page 75

scan a photo, upload (a photo) onto the internet, print a document, post a comment, delete a document, connect to the Wi-Fi network, enter a password, surf the Web, download a song

Transcript

- 1 **Boy** What are you doing?
Girl I'm scanning an old photo.
B Really? Why?
G I want to upload it onto the internet.
B Oh, I see. Who's in the photo?
G Me. And you ... as a baby.
B Hey! Let me see! Oh no, that's terrible ...
2 **Boy** What are you doing?
Girl I'm printing a document for school. What about you?
Why are you laughing? What are you doing?
B I'm posting a comment on Facebook.
G I hope it's a nice comment.
B It's a funny comment.
G Whose Facebook page is it?
B Yours.
3 **Boy** What are you doing?
Girl I'm deleting some documents from my laptop.
B Why are you doing that?
G The memory's full. I need more space. Whoops! Oh, no!
B What?
G That was our science project. I needed that!
B Don't worry. I've got a copy. I can email it to you from my phone. But I need to connect to the Wi-Fi network first. It says, 'Please enter your password'.
G Oh. I don't know the password for this network.
4 **Girl** What are you doing?
Boy I'm surfing the web. I'm looking for a song ...
G Which song?
B I don't know the name. But it's on an advert. Ah, here it is. And I can download the song from the internet for free!
G That's good.

Exercise 6 page 75

- 2 headphones 3 memory stick 4 download
5 router 6 laptop 7 surf

Exercise 7 page 75

- 1 c 2 a 3 a 4 a 5 b 6 b 7 c

Exercise 8 3.19 page 75

- 1 isn't connecting 2 's deleting 3 're posting
4 isn't entering 5 's posting 6 're surfing

Transcript

- 1 **Girl** I love that photo. Can you email it to me?
Boy I can't. There isn't any Wi-Fi at the moment.
G Yes, there is. Look. I've got Wi-Fi on my phone.
B Well I haven't got it on my tablet.
G Oh. Do you need the password?
B I've got the password. It's a problem with my tablet, I think. It was OK this afternoon, but now it isn't working. I just get an error message.
G Oh, dear.

2 Girl How do I get these contact details off my phone? Do I click on the red button?

Boy Let me see ... That's Megan's email address and phone number. What are you doing?

G I don't want her contact details on my phone.

B Why not?

G Because she isn't my friend any more.

B Oh, OK. Then yes, you click on the red button.

3 Girl What are you writing?

Boy I'm writing 'Nice photo!'

G That's a bit boring. Can we put something more interesting?

B OK. What about: 'Nice photo! I love the new trainers.'

G Yes, that's more interesting.

B What do I do now?

G You just press return. See?

4 Boy Aargh. This is really annoying.

Girl What is?

B I want to check my emails but I can't.

G Why not?

B Look. It says 'password incorrect'.

G Well, maybe you've got your password wrong.

B No way! Oh, wait. This is a different email account. I need my other password! That's why it isn't working.

5 Girl Smile! Say cheese!

Boy Let me see. Ha! That's a funny photo.

G Yes, it's a good one. These other photos are good too.

B Are you sharing them on your Facebook page?

G I can't. I can't get online here. But I'm meeting Jack at the library this afternoon. They've got Wi-Fi there.

B Oh, OK.

6 Boy Mmm ... This hot chocolate is so nice!

Girl Yes, the coffee's good too. Oh, look. Jay Z is playing at the Capital Radio summer festival next month.

B Really? Where can we buy tickets?

G I'm not sure.

B Let's visit the webpage. Look, there's a link.

G OK. Just a minute. I want to read this article first.

Exercise 9 page 75

Sentence 5 is about the future.

Exercise 10 3.19 page 75

1 d 2 f 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 e

Transcript

See exercise 8.

7B Grammar

Past simple (affirmative): irregular

Exercise 1 page 76

The man made the aeroplane himself.

Exercise 2 page 76

had (irregular), made (irregular), tried (regular), fell (irregular), broke (irregular), became (irregular), went (irregular), found (irregular), worked (regular), dreamed (regular), read (irregular), got (irregular), began (irregular), built (irregular), drew (irregular), took (irregular), saw (irregular), offered (regular)

Exercise 3 page 76

1 became 2 began 3 broke 4 built 5 drew 6 fell
7 found 8 got 9 went 10 had 11 made 12 read
13 saw 14 took

Exercise 4 page 76

1 did 2 saw 3 went 4 found / saw 5 took
6 spoke

Exercise 5 page 76

1 fought 2 bought 3 thought 4 taught 5 brought
6 caught

For further practice of the affirmative of past simple irregular verbs: Grammar Builder 7B page 136

1 1 got (irregular) 2 made (irregular) 3 enjoyed
4 bought (irregular) 5 played 6 drew (irregular)
7 taught (irregular) 8 took (irregular) 9 liked
10 had (irregular) 11 worked 12 built (irregular)

2 1 took 2 bought 3 built 4 had 5 got
6 made 7 lived 8 drew

3 2 She went to primary school last year.
3 I saw Luke's sister on the bus to school this morning.

4 She caught the train to work at 5.45 last Monday.
5 He read a magazine at breakfast yesterday morning.

6 They brought salad to school last week.

7 She did her homework in the kitchen last night.

8 My mum came home late from work yesterday.

4 1 was 2 fought 3 found 4 got 5 thought
6 were 7 fell 8 broke 9 spoke

Exercise 6 page 76

1 had 2 was 3 did 4 could 5 went 6 bought
7 came 8 brought 9 stayed 10 watched 11 spoke
12 played 13 were

7C Listening

Listening to instructions

Exercise 2 page 77

1 remove 2 Connect 3 Turn on 4 Connect
5 Install 6 follow 7 Restart 8 Visit 9 download

Exercise 3 3.20 page 77

1 C 2 E 3 A 4 B 5 F 6 H 7 D 8 G

Transcript

First of all, take your new computer out of the box and remove all the paper and plastic packaging. Secondly, before you plug in the computer, read the installation instructions and safety information. Thirdly, use the power cable to connect the computer to a power source. Then, press the power buttons on the wireless keyboard and mouse. Wait until the lights on the keyboard and mouse stop flashing. Next, turn on the computer by pressing the power button. After that, connect your computer to your wireless network and follow the on-screen instructions to set up your new computer, for example language selection or password creation. Finally, run the software update so that you have the newest versions of all the software on your computer.

Exercise 4  3.20 [page 77](#)

first of all; secondly; thirdly; then; next; after that; finally

Transcript

See exercise 3.

Exercise 5  3.21 [page 77](#)

Conversation 1 There are 5 steps: 1 check the cable; 2 go to 'settings'; 3 click on network; 4 choose the network; 5 enter your password

Conversation 2 There are 4 steps: 1 double click on the recycle bin; 2 find documents; 3 drag the files onto the desktop; 4 drag the documents into the folder

Conversation 3 There are 3 steps: 1 take out the memory stick; 2 plug it into a different USB port; 3 plug in a different stick and see if the computer recognises it

Transcript

1 Help Desk Hello, Help Desk.

Man Oh, hi. I've got a problem with my computer. I can't get online.

HD OK. First of all, check the cable at the back of the computer. Is it connected?

M Yes, it is.

HD Now go to 'Settings'.

M OK, 'Settings'. OK, I'm there.

HD Then click on 'Network'.

M Click on 'Network'. OK!

HD Next, choose the network you want to join.

M OK. I'm choosing 'Office network'.

HD Finally, enter your password.

M I can't remember what it is ... Oh, yes, I remember! It's 'password' P, A, S, S, W, O, R, D.

HD That isn't a very safe password.

M But it's easy to remember! ... Oh, it's working now. I'm back online. Thanks for your help.

HD You're welcome. Glad I could help.

2 Help Desk Good morning. IT Help Desk.

Woman Oh, good morning. I wonder if you can help me. I can't find some important documents. They were in a folder on my desktop. I think I accidentally deleted them. Can I get them back, do you think?

HD Have you emptied the Recycle bin?

W The recycle bin? No. The documents aren't in the recycle bin. I'm talking about documents on my computer.

HD Yes, I realise that. I'm talking about the Recycle bin on your computer. It's usually in the bottom right corner of the screen. Can you see it?

W Oh, yes! Sorry! There it is.

HD So, first of all, double-click on it. Then find the documents you are looking for.

W Yes, I can see them.

HD Drag them onto the desktop. Finally, drag the documents back into the folder.

W Oh, great. Thank you very much. I was really worried. It took me hours to write those documents!

3 Help Desk Good afternoon. Sally speaking. How can I help?

Man Oh, hi, Sally. Ben here. I've got a problem with a memory stick. When I plug it into the computer, I can't see it. The computer doesn't recognise it.

HD OK. Is the memory stick in the computer?

M Yes, it is.

HD First, take out the memory stick.

M OK.

HD Then plug it in to a different USB port.

M No, I still can't see it on the screen.

HD Have you got another memory stick there?

M No, but I can borrow one. Anna, can I borrow your memory stick for a moment?

Woman Sure.

HD Plug that in. See if the computer recognises it.

M Uh, yes, it does. I can see it.

HD Right. Your memory stick isn't working for some reason. You can bring it to the Help Desk office and I can have a look at it, if you like.

M Thanks. You're in room 204, aren't you? Is 10.30 OK?

HD Yes. Fine.

M Great. See you then.

Exercise 6  3.21 [page 77](#)

1 cable 2 password 3 in the recycle bin

4 documents 5 memory stick 6 204

Transcript

See exercise 5.

7D Grammar**Past simple (negative and interrogative)****Exercise 1** [page 78](#)

(Possible answers)

take photos, make videos, play games, surf the internet, listen to music, look at maps, make telephone calls

Exercise 2  3.22 [page 78](#)

There's no sound. He probably had his finger over the microphone.

Exercise 3 [page 78](#)

Negative No, I didn't. No, I didn't take any photos. It didn't work. I didn't check.

Interrogative Did you go to the music festival ... ? Did you go? Did Cool Heart play? Did you take any photos? Did you have your finger over the microphone?
a didn't (did not) b did c did, didn't

For further practice of the negative and interrogative of the past simple:

Grammar Builder 7D [page 136](#)

**5 2 didn't clean 3 didn't have 4 didn't win
5 didn't study 6 didn't forget 7 didn't buy
8 didn't take**

6 2 I didn't see you at the party.

3 Joe and Elli didn't come to the cinema with us.

4 Cathy didn't spend a year in France.

5 The lesson didn't begin on time.

6 Tom didn't write his name on his Workbook.

7 1 What time did you go to bed?

2 Did it rain in the morning?

3 Where did you do your homework?

4 How many phone calls did you make?

5 Who did you sit next to in class?

6 What did you do after school?

7 What time did you get up?

8 When did you get home from school?

9 2 What did you do in Oxford Street?

3 How did you go?

4 How long did you spend there?

5 What time did you get back?

10 1 Joe took some photos.

2 What time did they arrive at school?

3 Did Andy have a good weekend?

4 Pam didn't tidy her room. / Pam tidied her room.

5 They didn't travel to France by plane. / They travelled to France by plane.

6 'Did you download the app?' 'Yes, I did.'

Exercise 4 page 78

1 Tom didn't go to bed before 10 p.m. last night.

2 I didn't catch the bus to school.

3 Sarah didn't have a dream last night.

4 We didn't study English in primary school.

5 My friend didn't watch TV before school this morning.

6 Sarah and Fred didn't have breakfast this morning.

Exercise 5 page 78

2 Did you catch the bus to school?

3 Did you have a dream last night?

4 Did you study English in primary school?

5 Did you watch TV before school this morning?

6 Did you have breakfast this morning?

Exercise 7 3.23 page 78

1 Were you 2 wasn't 3 couldn't 4 did Cool Heart play

5 didn't play 6 Were 7 didn't hear 8 didn't want

Exercise 8 page 78

1 go 2 help 3 use 4 eat 5 meet 6 play 7 send

8 surf 9 be

7E Word Skills

Introduction to phrasal verbs

Exercise 2 page 79

turn on (transitive); type in (transitive); log on (intransitive); log off (intransitive); shut down (transitive)

Exercise 3 page 79

A log on B back up C scan in D turn down

E turn up F turn on G turn on / shut down H type in
backup prepare a second copy of a file, program, etc. that you can use if the main one fails plug in connect electrical equipment to the main supply of electricity scan in pass light over a picture or document using a scanner in order to copy it and put it in the memory of a computer shutdown stop a machine working turn down reduce the noise produced by a piece of equipment by moving its controls turn off stop the flow of electricity by moving a switch, pressing a button, etc. turn on start the flow of electricity by moving a switch, pressing a button, etc. turn up increase the sound of a piece of equipment type in use the keyboard to put information into a computer breakdown stop working because of a fault log off perform the actions that allow you to finish using a computer system log on perform the actions that allow you to begin using a computer system

Exercise 4 page 79

A transitive verb has *something* between the two parts of the verb.

Exercise 5 page 79

1 turned down 2 log on 3 typed in 4 backed up

5 shut down 6 plug in, turn (it) on

Exercise 7 page 79

(Possible answer)

First, plug in the computer. Secondly, turn it on. Then log on. You have to type in your username and password. Next, do your work and remember to back it up. After that, log off. Finally, shut the computer down.

7F Reading

Dancing Man

Exercise 1 page 80

Cyberbullying is the use of electronic communication to bully a person, typically by sending messages of an intimidating or threatening nature.

Exercise 2 page 80

The text mentions putting pictures of someone on the internet so people will laugh at them.

Exercise 3 page 80

2 b 3 f 4 a 5 g 6 e 7 c

Exercise 4 page 80

1 E 2 B 3 A 4 D

Exercise 5 3.24 page 80

Exercise 6 page 80

1 d 2 a 3 f 4 e 5 b 6 c

7G Speaking

In a shop

Exercise 1 page 82

They're probably in a shop. They're discussing a mobile phone.

Exercise 2 3.25 page 82

The girl buys the Micro 4.

Exercise 3 page 82

£89.99 (eighty-nine, ninety-nine), £120.50 (one hundred and twenty pounds fifty)

Exercise 4 3.26 page 82

KEY

Conversation 1 1 a laptop; 2 touch-screens and a built-in webcam; 3 £269.49

Conversation 2 1 a tablet; 2 battery life, a memory card slot and an HDMI port; 3 £105.99

Conversation 3 1 a video game controller; 2 a motion sensor and a case; 3 £30.75

Transcript

1 **Boy** Excuse me. I'm looking for a laptop.
Sales assistant How much do you want to spend?
B Well, no more than £250.
SA The Sonic 204 is £249.50. And the TX Inspire is a little cheaper. That's £225..
B OK, and do they both have touch-screens?
SA No, only the TX has a touch-screen.
B And what about a built-in webcam? Have they both got that?
SA Yes, all laptops come with a built-in webcam these days.
B OK, well, I'd like the TX Inspire, please.
SA Certainly. That comes to £249.50, please.
B Oh, I'd like a case for it, too, please ... This one looks nice. How much is it?
SA £19.99.
B Can I pay by debit card?
SA Yes, of course. That's £269.49 in total, please. ... Thank you. There you are.
B Thanks very much. Good-bye.

2 **Sales assistant** Can I help you?
Girl Yes, I'm looking for a tablet. I like this one.
SA Yes, the Universe 4 is very popular.
G Has it got a good battery life?
SA Yes, up to twelve hours of reading, surfing the internet, watching videos, playing music ...
G That sounds great. And does it have a memory card slot?
SA No, it doesn't. But the Universe 5 does. And it's got an HDMI port too so you can connect the tablet to your television and watch videos on it.
G Is the Universe 5 much more expensive than the Universe 4?
SA The Universe 4 is £105.99 and the Universe 5 is £124.99
G OK, I'd like the Universe 4, please.
SA How would you like to pay?
G By debit card, please.
SA Certainly. So, that's £105.99 ... Enter your PIN, please. ... Thank you. ... Here you are.
G Thanks. Bye.
SA Thank you. Have a nice day.

3 **Sales assistant** Hello. How can I help you?
Boy I'm looking for a video game controller.
SA Video game controllers are over here.
B This one is nice. How much is it?
SA It's £30.75p.
B Does it have a motion sensor?
SA Yes, it does. And it comes with a case too ...
B OK, I'll take it.
SA Would you like anything else?
B No, thanks.
SA If you'd like to come over to the till, then ... That's £30.75.
B Here's £40.
SA Thank you. ... Here's your change and receipt.
B Thanks very much. Good-bye.
SA Thank you. Goodbye.

Exercise 5 page 82

- 1 help 2 looking 3 Next 4 much 5 comes 6 pay
7 cash 8 credit card 9 PIN 10 change 11 receipt
12 like 14 Would

Shop assistant 1, 3, 5, 6, 9, 10, 12, 13

Customer 2, 4, 7, 8, 11

For further practice of money and prices:

Vocabulary Builder 7G page 120

1 1 c 2 d 3 b 4 e 5 a

2 1 ninety-nine p / pence 2 one pound thirty-seven
3 two hundred and fifty pounds 4 five p / pence
5 four pounds ninety-nine 6 seventy-five pounds
eighty-five

3 2 forty p 3 three forty-nine 4 thirty-five pence
5 one pound twenty 6 a hundred and eighty
pounds

Exercise 6 page 82

Conversation 1 That comes to £249.50, please. How much is it? Can I pay by debit card, please?

Conversation 2 How would you like to pay? Enter your PIN, please.

Conversation 3 How much is it? Would you like anything else? Here's your change and receipt.

Transcript

See exercise 4.

7H Writing

A narrative

Exercise 2 page 83

KEY

The phone became locked when Emily entered her PIN because she entered it incorrectly three times. She and her friend had swapped phones by accident, so they had the wrong phone.

Exercise 3 page 83

1 A few months ago 2 Afterwards 3 then 4 in the end

Exercise 4 page 83

1 kindly, unfortunately, Amazingly, Luckily, safely

2 late, hard

3 kindly: use 1 unfortunately: use 2 Amazingly: use 2
Luckily: use 2 safely: use 1 late: use 1 hard: use 1

For further practice of word families:

Vocabulary Builder 7H page 120

3 1 loudly 2 badly 3 well 4 fast 5 dangerously
6 slowly

4 (Possible answers)

1 well 2 loudly 3 badly 4 fast
5 dangerously 6 slowly

Exercise 5 page 83

- 1 'Have you got my charger?' she asked.
2 'I can't find my memory stick,' said Tom.
3 'Good luck!' shouted my mum. 'Thanks,' I said.
4 'It's very late,' said my friend.
5 'Did you see me?' asked Ben quietly. 'Yes,' I replied.

Map of resources**8A Vocabulary**

Student's Book, pages 84–85; Workbook, page 86
Photocopyable: 8A (Sports and hobbies)

8B Grammar

Student's Book, page 86; Workbook, page 87
Photocopyable: 8B (*going to*)

8C Listening

Student's Book, page 87; Workbook, page 88

8D Grammar

Student's Book, page 88; Workbook, page 89
Photocopyable: 8D (*will*)

8E Word Skills

Student's Book, page 89; Workbook, page 90

8F Reading

Student's Book, pages 90–91; Workbook, page 91

8G Speaking

Student's Book, page 92; Workbook, page 92
Photocopyable: Functional Language Practice (Making arrangements)

8H Writing

Student's Book, page 93; Workbook, page 93

Culture 8

Student's Book, page 115
DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 8

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 8**End of unit**

Unit Review: Workbook, pages 94–95
Photocopyable: Grammar Review
Exam Skills Trainer 4: Student's Book, pages 94–95
Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 8

8A Vocabulary**Sports and hobbies****Exercise 2** page 84

1 badminton **2** basketball **3** golf **4** handball
5 karate **6** yoga

Exercise 3 3.27 page 84**Exercise 4** page 84

play badminton, basketball, football, golf, handball, ice hockey, table tennis, tennis, volleyball
go climbing, cycling, dancing, ice skating, roller skating, running, skateboarding, skiing, surfing, swimming
do aerobics, athletics, gymnastics, judo, karate, yoga

Exercise 5 page 84

(**Possible answers**)

play baseball, cricket, rugby
go bowling, sailing, snowboarding
do archery, boxing, fencing, motorcycle racing, taekwondo, weightlifting, wrestling

Exercise 7 page 85

- 1** A (the Olympic torch) and C (the Olympic flag) **2** b
3 c **4** ice hockey, ice skating, skiing **5** a (BMX) cycling;
b (cross country) skiing; c (synchronised) swimming;
d (beach) volleyball **6** b **7** a (2008) Beijing; b (2012)
London; c (2016) Rio de Janeiro; d (2020) Tokyo

Exercise 8 3.28 page 85

1 surfing **2** tennis **3** ice hockey **4** athletics

Transcript

- 1** I live near the beach, so I go quite often. In the summer, I go nearly every day. It's really difficult to stand up on the board. I can't do it every time – I fall over a lot! Like last Saturday afternoon – there was a perfect wave, and I stood up, but I couldn't stay on my feet. I didn't hurt myself or anything – I was fine. My friend videoed it all on his phone! It was funny ...
2 I took part in a competition last weekend. I didn't do very well, really. It was really sunny and I couldn't see the ball very well. Then my racket broke half way through my first match. I lost the match anyway 6:1, 6:1, so I didn't take part in the competition after that. It really wasn't a very nice experience for me.
3 I joined the team because I love ice skating – but I'm not a very good player. Last night was probably my best match, though. The whole team played well. And guess what – I got two goals! The final score was 5:3 to us. We were so happy, because we don't win very often!
4 I joined the national team a few months ago, and now I go to competitions most weekends. Last Sunday, it was in London. I competed in three races and I nearly won the 400 metres – I was only half a second behind the winner. And my time was really good. In fact, it was a new British record for my age group. So it was a good experience for me.

Exercise 9 3.28 page 85

a fell (irregular) **b** didn't injure (regular) **c** didn't win (irregular) **d** didn't enjoy (regular) **e** scored (regular)
f didn't lose (irregular) **g** came (irregular) **h** broke (irregular)

Transcript

See exercise 8.

8B Grammar***going to*****Exercise 1** 3.29 page 86

c

Exercise 2 page 86

Affirmative I'm going to take part in a judo competition in Newcastle. I'm going to stay with my cousins, Luke and Toby. You're going to have lots of supporters. They're going to take part in the competition!

Negative My cousins aren't going to support me.

Interrogative What are you going to do this weekend? Are you going to stay in a hotel? Are they going to be at the competition?

Exercise 3 page 86

- 1 I'm not going to do 2 I'm going to do 3 I'm going to buy
4 Are ... going to be 5 aren't going to have 6 I'm
going to meet

For further practice of *going to*:

Grammar Builder 8B page 138

- 1 2 are 3 I'm / are 4 are 5 is 6 I'm / am
7 I'm / is 8 I'm / are
- 2 2 My parents aren't going to visit Canada.
3 We aren't going to have dinner at home.
4 My sister and I aren't going to do our homework together.
5 Lucas isn't going to buy a new bike.
6 I'm not going to play video games all evening.
7 She isn't going to make lunch for us.
8 They aren't going to start school tomorrow.
- 3 2 We aren't going to take an exam in a few days.
We're going to take an exam this afternoon.
3 I'm not going to write a letter tonight. I'm going to send an email (tonight).
4 They aren't going to move house tomorrow.
They're going to move house tomorrow.
5 She isn't going to go running this evening. She's going to do aerobics (this evening).
6 I'm not going to start university next month. I'm going to start university next year.
- 4 2 Is your best friend going to visit you tonight? Yes, he/ she is. / No, he/she isn't.
3 Are you going to travel abroad next summer? Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.
4 Are your friends going to start university next year? Yes, they are. / No, they aren't.
5 Are you going to take any exams next year? Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.
6 Are you and your classmates going to have maths tomorrow? Yes, we are. / No, we aren't.

Exercise 4 3.30 page 86

- 2 Olivia and Sophie are going to do (their) schoolwork.
3 Bella isn't going to send an email. 4 Conrad and Alex aren't going to watch a DVD. 5 George is going to go cycling. 6 Poppy and Alice are going to play volleyball.

Transcript

1 We're going to have a special meal this weekend because it's my grandad's 70th birthday. I'm going shopping this evening with my dad to buy the food. And then my mum and dad are going to cook everything on Saturday afternoon. I'm not going to help, though – I'm not very good at cooking!

2 **Olivia** What are your plans for the weekend, Sophie?

Sophie I'm going to finish my science project.

Olivia Yes, me too! And I need to practise the piano tonight. I've got a concert tomorrow evening.

Sophie Good luck!

3 **Bella** Next month, I'm going to Canada to see my aunt and uncle. So this weekend, I'm going to write a letter to them. They don't like emails. In fact, they haven't got a computer! It's strange, isn't it? Everybody sends emails these days – except for my aunt and uncle!

4 **Conrad** Hi, Alex. What are your plans for the weekend?

Alex Well, tomorrow, I'm going to meet some friends in town.

C At the shopping centre?

A That's right. Are you going to be there?

C No, I'm not. What about Sunday? Have you got plans?

A No, I haven't. Why don't you come over?

C Great idea. We can watch a DVD.

A No, we can't. My DVD player isn't working.

C Oh, dear!

A But we can listen to music.

C OK. Let's do that. See you tomorrow!

5 The weather is really good at the moment, so this weekend, I'm going cycling with some friends. I hope my bike is OK. It's really old and I need a new one – badly! In fact, next week I'm going to the bike shop with my parents. We're going to buy a new bike. I'm really excited about it. But we can't do it before this weekend, so I have to use my old one ...

6 **Poppy** Great. It's Saturday tomorrow!

Alice I know. Are you going to be at the beach in the afternoon?

P For the volleyball game? Yes, definitely. I love playing volleyball.

A Me too. And we're going to stay at the beach for the evening too.

P Really? Why?

A For the barbecue!

P Oh. I didn't know about that.

A Yes, we're going to have a barbecue in the evening. Can you stay?

P Yes, I can.

A Great! See you tomorrow, then!

Exercise 5 page 86

this afternoon, this evening / tonight, tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, in a few days / this weekend, in a few days / next week, next weekend, next month, next year

Other future time expressions tomorrow morning / afternoon / evening / night, next Saturday, the week after next, in a few weeks / months / years

Exercise 6 3.30 page 86

2 **Olivia** is going to practise the piano tonight.

3 **Bella** is going to visit relatives next month.

4 **Conrad** and **Alex** are going to listen to music this weekend.

5 **George** is going to get a new bike next week.

6 **Poppy** and **Alice** are going to have a barbecue tomorrow (evening).

Transcript

See exercise 4.

8C Listening

Prediction

Exercise 1 page 87

(Possible answers)

In photo A, I think I can see a man in a tent. The tent is on the side of a mountain. It doesn't look safe. The man is probably tired, so he's resting. In photo B, two people are climbing a steep rock face. They're using ropes. In photo C, it's dark. A man is looking at a rock. He's wearing a light on his head.

Exercise 2 page 87

- 1 They wanted to climb the Dawn Wall.
- 2 It's a one thousand-metre rock face on El Capitan, a mountain in Yosemite National Park.
- 3 It is using ropes only for safety, not for climbing.
- 4 They trained for six years.
- 5 They attempted it at the end of 2014.

Exercise 3 3.31 page 87

(Possible answers)

- 2 thirsty / hot
- 3 El Capitan / the mountain / the Dawn Wall / the hill
- 4 the world / Yosemite / Turkey
- 5 drove away / waited
- 6 cash / credit card / debit card
- 7 ago
- 8 internet / web

Transcript

- 1 Look at those dark clouds. I think it's ...
- 2 Is there anything to drink? I'm ...
- 3 They climbed to the top of ...
- 4 It's the tallest mountain in ...
- 5 Dad got in the car and ...
- 6 Can I pay by ...
- 7 I bought this phone a few weeks ...
- 8 I love surfing the ...

Exercise 4 3.32 page 87

- 2 really thirsty
- 3 the hill
- 4 the world
- 5 drove to work
- 6 debit card
- 7 before the end of term
- 8 internet

Transcript

- 1 Look at those dark clouds. I think it's going to rain.
- 2 Is there anything to drink? I'm really thirsty.
- 3 They climbed to the top of the hill.
- 4 It's the tallest mountain in the world.
- 5 Dad got in the car and drove to work.
- 6 Can I pay by debit card?
- 7 I bought this phone a few weeks before the end of term.
- 8 I love surfing the internet.

Exercise 5 3.33 page 87

Transcript

See exercise 6 for full transcript.

Exercise 6 3.34 page 87

- 2 went to sleep
- 3 on social media websites
- 4 falling off the rock face
- 5 stayed fine
- 6 stop for a few days
- 7 arrived at the top
- 8 in the world

Transcript

- 1 The men started their climb in December, when the days are short. Each day, they started their climbing day at 3pm, just two hours before the sun went down.

- 2 They climbed every day for about seven hours, using head-torches to see where they were going. Then at midnight they stopped climbing, set up their tent and **went to sleep**.
- 3 They woke up at 10 a.m. and had breakfast. Every day the climbers took photos and made videos on their phones, and posted them **on social media websites**.
- 4 The climbers used ropes, of course, but the ropes didn't help them to climb. The ropes were only there to keep them safe and stop them from **falling off the rock face**.
- 5 The biggest danger was the weather. It's too dangerous to climb in very strong winds and rain. But luckily, the weather **stayed fine**.
- 6 Another danger was injuries. The rock is very hard and sharp, but the climbers can't wear gloves. Half way up the rock face, Jorgeson cut his finger badly and they had to **stop for a few days**.
- 7 But his hand got better, and on the evening of January 14th 2015, after climbing for nineteen days, they finally **arrived at the top**.
- 8 Their lives will be very different now. TV stations and newspapers want to interview them. That isn't very surprising, though, as Tommy and Kevin are now probably the most famous climbers **in the world!**

Exercise 7 page 87

- 1 How long did you train for? We trained for six years.
- 2 When did you start to climb? We started in December.
- 3 How many hours did you climb each day? We climbed for about seven hours.
- 4 Did you get any injuries? I cut my finger badly and we had to stop for a few days.
- 5 Where did you sleep? We slept in our tent.
- 6 What was the biggest danger? The weather.

8D Grammar

will

Exercise 1 page 88

People with physical disabilities compete in the Paralympics.

Exercise 2 page 88

- 1 F
- 2 T
- 3 F

Exercise 3 page 88

Affirmative 'I will never forget that moment,' she says. 'I think I'll probably take a short break,' says Ellie. She'll be a member of the British Paralympic team for years to come.

Negative She won't stop swimming – that's certain!

Interrogative What will she do when she finishes her course?

For further practice of *will*:

Grammar Builder 8D page 138

- 6 1 Josh won't be at home this weekend.
 - 2 I'll phone you this evening.
 - 3 Our next maths exam won't be easy.
 - 4 My dad will be 47 on 14 October.
 - 5 I hope that I'll be rich and famous.
 - 6 You won't need an umbrella today.
-
- 7 1 will / won't discover 2 will / won't travel 3 will / won't speak 4 will / won't be 5 will / won't live 6 will / won't disappear
-
- 8 2 Do you think you and your friends will go out on Friday evening?
 - 3 Do you think you'll pass all your exams?
 - 4 Do you think your country will win the next World Cup?
 - 5 Do you think you'll study English at university?
 - 6 Do you think you'll wear jeans to school tomorrow?

Exercise 4 page 88

- 1 won't arrive
- 2 I'll see
- 3 won't do
- 4 won't be
- 5 I'll meet
- 6 Will ... be, will

Exercise 5 page 88

'I think I'll probably take a short break,' says Ellie.

Exercise 6 page 88

- 2 I think / I don't think the 2028 Olympics will be in Europe.
- 3 I think / I don't think I'll go to a live sports event in the next few months.
- 4 I think / I don't think Neymar will score more than 30 goals next season.
- 5 I think / I don't think Andy Murray will play at Wimbledon next year.
- 6 I think / I don't think Spain will win the World Cup in 2022.

8E Word Skills

Noun suffixes

Exercise 2 page 89

She's going to cycle through Japan to raise money for charity.

Exercise 3 page 89

accommodate – accommodation (change: drop the e)
achieve – achievement dark – darkness donate –
donations (change: drop the e) homesick – homesickness
organise – organisation (change: drop the e) permit –
permission (change in spelling) prepare – preparation
(change: drop the e) treat – treatment

Exercise 4 page 89

- 1 advertisement
- 2 rudeness
- 3 information
- 4 suggestion
- 5 fitness
- 6 argument
- 7 discussion
- 8 explanation

Exercise 5 page 89

- 1 information
- 2 advertisement
- 3 Fitness
- 4 argument
- 5 discussion
- 6 rudeness
- 7 suggestion
- 8 explanation

8F Reading

Against the odds

Exercise 1 page 90

B

Exercise 2 page 90

A 2 B 3 C 3 D 1

Exercise 3 page 90

1 a 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 c

Exercise 4 page 90

1 Mike 2 Mike 3 Alana 4 Christian 5 Alana
6 Christian

Exercise 5 page 91

French; British; Turkish; American

Exercise 6 page 91

-an American, Australian, Brazilian, Canadian, German, Hungarian, Italian, Russian
-ish British, Polish, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish
-ese Chinese, Japanese
Czech, Slovak and French do not fit.

8G Speaking

Negotiating

Exercise 1 page 92

shot put; high jump; relay

For further practice of athletics events:

Vocabulary Builder 8G page 121

- 1 A hurdles B shot put C cross-country running
- 2 Running 5,000 metres, 10,000 metres, cross-country running, marathon, relay, hurdles
Throwing hammer, javelin, shot put
Jumping hurdles, long jump, pole vault, triple jump

Exercise 2 page 92

1 the 100 metre race 2 badminton, swimming 3 They agree to watch the swimming.

Exercise 3 page 92

- 1 I'd rather not.
- 2 I don't think that's a good idea.
- 3 I'd rather
- 4 I think ... would be better.

Exercise 5 page 92

That's too early! Those tickets are too expensive.

For further practice of *too + adjective*:

Grammar Builder 8G page 138

- 9 1 too short 2 too early 3 too heavy
4 too scary 5 too difficult 6 too hot

Exercise 6 3.37 page 92

They agree to see two events: basketball and water polo.

Transcript

- Boy** Hi, Kate. Are you excited about the Olympics?
Girl Yes, I am. There are lots of great events on Saturday. Let's buy tickets for some of them.
B Sure, good idea. Have you got the timetable?
G Yes, it's online. We can look at it on my phone.
B OK. Let me see ... So there are three venues.
G Yes. But the stadium is on the other side of the city. I think it's too far.
B You're right. Let's just go to the other two. They're closer.
G Do you fancy going to the diving?
B I like diving. But eight o'clock in the morning is very early!
G I suppose so. But we want to start early. That way, we can see three different events.
B I think three events in one day is too much. For a start, the tickets will be really expensive.
G I see what you mean. OK, let's just choose two events. How about basketball at ten o'clock?
B That's a good idea. I love basketball.
G So basketball at ten o'clock in the indoor arena. What about handball? That's at twelve.
B I don't fancy it. I'm not really into handball. It's boring.
G Do you think so? I like it. But I also like water polo. It's really exciting!
B Is that right? I never watch it.
G You'll enjoy it, believe me.
B OK. So that's water polo at four o'clock.
G Great! I'll buy the tickets.

Exercise 7 3.38 page 92

- 1 right 2 so 3 see 4 mean 5 think 6 that

Transcript

See exercise 6.

8H Writing

An informal letter

Exercise 2 page 93

The triathlon will be at the end of July in Hyde Park in London.

Exercise 3 page 93

bike, helmet, wetsuit, goggles, running shoes

For further practice of sports equipment:

Vocabulary Builder 8H page 121

- 3 A skates B socks C bat and ball D net
E racket F goal G shorts H gloves
4 a boots, gloves, goggles, helmet, running shoes,
shirt, shorts, skates, socks, trainers, wetsuit
b ball, bat, racket
5 (Possible answers) 2 ice hockey, rollerskating
3 tennis, badminton 4 ice hockey, skiing
5 cycling, climbing, skateboarding 6 volleyball,
tennis 7 surfing 8 baseball, table tennis

Exercise 4 page 93

- 1 top-right 2 below 3 Dear 4 PS

Exercise 5 page 93

A Sorry, it's ages since I wrote to you.

B Listen, did I tell you that ... / about ... Oh, and another thing, ...

C Maybe you / we could ... How about (+ -ing form)?

Emily uses: Sorry I didn't reply sooner. Guess what! It would be great if you could ...

4 Exam Skills Trainer

Reading

Exercise 1 page 94

- 1 Tricking, gymnastics, dance
2 long list, rules, tricking
3 Tricking, started, judo
4 Trickers, post videos, online
5 Trickers, learn, social media
6 first tricking, 2010
7 trickers, all over the world
8 butterfly twist, easy, beginners

Exercise 2 page 94

KEY

- 1 F 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 F

Listening

Exercise 3 page 94

- 1 by the sea 2 2nd May 3 two o'clock 4 watch films
5 a friend 6 two

Exercise 4 3.38 page 94

- 1 table tennis 2 17/seventeen 3 computer game design 4 engineers 5 thirty-five/35 6 one week
7 in 2008 8 700

Transcript

If you type in 'summer camps' on the internet, you'll probably see a long list of children's holiday organisations offering activities like swimming, fishing, volleyball and table tennis. Now try typing in 'tech summer camps' instead, and see what you get. Something very different. Rather than outdoor activities, tech summer camps offer young people an exciting range of technology-related courses and activities. SuperTech Summer Camp in Ireland has an interesting programme of events for children and teenagers between the ages of nine and seventeen. 'Campers' can learn about web programming, computer game design and even robot-making. They can focus on one area of technology or try different things. They have the help of a number of course leaders who are all well-qualified and experienced teachers, engineers and scientists.

The camps are held at the O'Malley Centre. This is a large conference centre about 35 km to the west of Dublin. Children from the UK and Europe come to the camps. Each camp is one week, but children can come to two or three camps if they want a longer holiday.

How did it all begin? Matthew Day was a science teacher at a school in Dublin and he wanted to offer something extra to children in the summer holidays. He started SuperTech Summer Camp in 2008. The first summer camp was small, but now about 200 children attend the Summer Camps each year. One week at SuperTech Summer Camp costs £700 per child.

Use of English

Exercise 5 page 95

people	nationalities	things
climber	Chinese	achievement
farmer	Swedish	argument
runner		discussion,
swimmer		improvement
worker		

Exercise 6 page 95

- 1 information 2 artist 3 photographer 4 British
5 Australian 6 teenager 7 achievement
8 invention

Speaking

Exercise 7 page 95

1 F 2 A 3 A 4 F 5 A 6 A 7 F 8 A

Writing

Exercise 9 page 95

1 went 2 'm having 3 didn't reply 4 saw 5 'm
going to be 6 are thinking 7 found 8 don't have /
haven't got

Exercise 10 page 95

(Example answer)

Dear Jess,

Guess what! I won a ticket for a holiday in Croatia! A few months ago, in a magazine, I saw some information about a photo contest. It invited people to send in their best travel photos. I sent a photo from my holiday in the Czech Republic last year. Then I forgot all about it. Then yesterday I received a letter saying I'm the winner!

I'm going to take the trip next month. I want to go scuba diving there, so right now I'm taking scuba diving lessons at my local swimming pool. I'm really enjoying it.

I'll send you a postcard from my holiday!

Love,

Kate

Map of resources**9A Vocabulary**

Student's Book, pages 96–97; Workbook, page 96

Photocopiable: 9A (My home)

DVD: Unit 9

9B Grammar

Student's Book, page 98; Workbook, page 97

Photocopiable: 9B (Present perfect: (affirmative))

9C Listening

Student's Book, page 99; Workbook, page 98

9D Grammar

Student's Book, page 100; Workbook, page 99

Photocopiable: 9D (Present perfect: (negative and interrogative))

9E Word Skills

Student's Book, page 101; Workbook, page 100

9F Reading

Student's Book, pages 102–103; Workbook, page 101

9G Speaking

Student's Book, page 104; Workbook, page 102

9H Writing

Student's Book, page 105; Workbook, page 103

Culture 9

Student's Book, page 116

DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 9

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 9**End of unit**

Unit Review: Workbook, pages 96–97

Photocopiable: Grammar Review

Photocopiable: Vocabulary Review

Exam Skills Trainer 5: Student's Book, pages 106–107

Exam Skills Trainer 5: Workbook, pages 106–107

Cumulative Review 1–9: Workbook, pages 116–117

Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 9

Cumulative Test Units 6–9

Cumulative Test Units 1–9

9A Vocabulary**My home****Exercise 2** page 96

1 blinds 2 lamp 3 bookcase 4 sofa 5 mirror

6 wardrobe 7 chest of drawers 8 desk 9 bin

10 bed 11 clock 12 rug 13 light 14 table 15 chair

Exercise 3 4.02 page 88**Exercise 5** page 97

1 loft 2 bathroom 3 toilet 4 bedroom 5 study

6 garage 7 living room 8 hall 9 dining room

10 kitchen 11 utility room 12 basement 13 garden

Photo A living room **Photo B** bedroom**Photo C** living room **Photo D** dining room**Exercise 6** 4.03 page 97**Exercise 7** page 97**(Possible answers)**

bathroom bath, bin, blinds, curtains, light, mirror, shelves, shower, sink, stool, toilet **bedroom** bed, bin, blinds, bookcase, carpet, chair, chest of drawers, clock, curtains, desk, lamp, light, mirror, rug, shelves, stool, table, **wardrobe** **dining room** blinds, carpet, chair, curtains, lamp, light, rug, table **kitchen** bin, blinds, chair, clock, cooker, cupboard, curtains, dishwasher, light, shelves, stool, table, washing machine **living room** bin, blinds, bookcase, carpet, chair, clock, curtains, hi-fi, lamp, light, mirror, rug, shelves, sofa, table **study** bin, blinds, bookcase, carpet, chair, clock, curtains, desk, lamp, light, rug, shelves **utility room** bin, dishwasher, light, sink, washing machine

Exercise 8 4.04 page 97

2 the kitchen; he burned his hand on the hot cooker.

3 the bedroom; the cat made dirty marks on the bed

4 living room; she's dying in the video game she's playing

5 garage; his hand is stuck in a bicycle wheel

6 garden; she thinks she sees a snake

Transcript1 **Boy** Aaaargh!**Mum** What's the matter? What is it?**B** Look! There's a spider in the bath.**M** Where?**B** Just there. Look!**M** It's a small one.**B** It's not small. It's big. And I don't like it!2 **Dad** Aaaargh!**Girl** Are you OK, dad?**D** Yes, I'm OK. I'm cleaning the cooker. And it's hot.**G** Is the cooker on?**D** No, of course not. Oh, wait a moment. Yes, it is.**G** That's why it's so hot.**D** I'll turn it off.3 **Mum** Aaaargh!**Boy** Are you OK, mum?**M** No. Look at my bed! What are those dirty marks?**B** I don't know.**Cat** Miaow.**B** Oh, look! Trixie is in your bed. That's so sweet!**M** No, it isn't.**B** Where's my phone? I want to take a photo!4 **Girl** Aaaargh!**Boy** What's happening?**G** I'm dying!**B** Well, hurry up. I want to watch TV.

G You've got a TV in your bedroom.
B I want to watch this TV. It's bigger. And I can sit on the sofa.
G Oh, OK. Aaargh! I'm dying again. I'm dead.
B Great! Now I can watch the football.

5 Grandad Aaargh!

Girl Are you OK, Grandad?

Gr I can't move my hand. It's stuck! Here, hold the wheel.

Gi What are you doing?

Gr I'm trying to fix your bike.

Gi My bike isn't broken.

Gr It is now!

6 Grandma Aaaargh!

Boy What's the matter, Grandma?

G There's a snake! Next to that tree!

B Where? I can't see it.

G It's in the grass. Look! It's red.

B That isn't a snake. It's a skipping rope.

G Oh. Sorry. My eyes aren't very good! I'm trying to find my sunhat, I think I left it out here.

B Look, there it is, next to the apple tree.

G Oh, thank you!

Exercise 9 4.04 page 97

- 1 doesn't like 2 is cleaning 3 is lying 4 wants
5 isn't fixing 6 is looking for

Transcript

See exercise 8.

9B Grammar

Present perfect (affirmative)

Exercise 1 page 98

Laurie isn't enjoying his stay in Germany. He misses his home.

Exercise 2 page 98

arrived – regular; had – irregular; tried – regular; put – irregular; given – irregular; sent – irregular; replied – regular

Exercise 3 page 98

Group 1 finish – finished, help – helped, learn – learned, phone – phoned, play – played, watch – watched

Group 2 feel – felt, learn – learned, leave – left, make – made, meet – met, say – said, sleep – slept, spend – spent, tell – told

Group 3 be – been, come – come, do – done, eat – eaten, forget – forgotten, give – given, see – seen, speak – spoken, take – taken, write – written

For further practice of the present perfect affirmative: Grammar Builder 9B page 140

1 1 've / have travelled 2 has started 3 've / have chatted 4 has stopped 5 've / have worked 6 has married 7 have lived 8 've / have visited

2 1 've / have written 2 've / have eaten 3 has told 4 've / have given 5 has been 6 've / have made

3 2 Ed Sheeran has replied to my tweet. 3 You've forgotten your coat. 4 Our train has stopped between two stations. 5 My teacher has emailed my parents. 6 My friends have planned a great trip. 7 We've seen the latest Bond film. 8 You've taken a lot of photos.

4 2 My friends have just arrived. 3 We've just seen that film. 4 They've just done their homework. 5 I've just told Tara about the party. 6 My mum has just bought a new computer. 7 I've just tidied my bedroom.

Exercise 4 page 98

- 1 've forgotten 2 's tried 3 've told 4 've done
5 've left 6 've spent

Exercise 5 page 98

We've just had dinner and now I'm in my bedroom.

Exercise 7 page 98

- 1 've had 2 've played 3 've met 4 've spoken
5 've learnt / learned 6 've ... eaten 7 've helped
8 've ... sent

9C Listening

University accommodation

Exercise 1 page 99

- 1 They're university or college students.
2 They're relaxing in their room.
3 Students' own answers

Exercise 2 page 99

- 1 a 2 of 3 have 4 can 5 to 6 with 7 from

Exercise 3 4.05 page 99

- 1 D 2 I 3 A 4 G 5 L 6 F 7 C 8 B 9 E
10 H 11 J 12 K

Exercise 4 4.06 page 99

- 1 do you 2 are you going to 3 do you want to
4 Can you 5 Do you have to 6 kind of, do you want to

Transcript

1 Where do you live?

2 What are you going to do at the weekend?

3 What do you want to do when you leave school?

4 Can you speak any languages apart from your own language and English?

5 Do you have to pay to study at university in your country?

6 What kind of job do you want to do when you finish your studies?

Exercise 6 4.07 page 99

- 2 kind of, are you 3 are you 4 Can you
5 Do you want to 6 Are you

Transcript

Agent Good morning. Can I help you?

Student Oh, hello. Yes, I'm going to start my second year at Bristol University in September and I'm looking for somewhere to live.

A What kind of place are you looking for?

S I don't know, really.

A Well, do you want to live in a shared house? Or are you looking for your own flat?

S I'm not sure. I suppose a flat is going to be more expensive?

A Probably. But it depends where it is. A one-bed flat near the university is going to cost about seven or eight hundred pounds a month. But if you go further out, to the edge of the city, you can find one for maybe four or five hundred.

S That's quite expensive. I've got two friends who I can share with.

A Then a house is better for you, I think.

S How much does it cost to live in a house?

A Between about 200 and 400 pounds a month.

S That's cheap. About £70 to £130 each!

A No, 200 to 400 per person.

S Oh, OK. Can you show me some houses?

A This one is outside Bristol. £250 a week. It's got a nice big dining room and living room. And there's a dishwasher in the kitchen.

S I really want to be closer to the centre.

A OK, well, this one is £300. It's about a mile from the centre. There are lots of shops and restaurants nearby. It's in quite a lively part of town.

S Lively ... So quite noisy?

A Yes, I think so. This one's in a quieter area. It's £320. Sharing with two others.

S It sounds great. Is there a shared bathroom?

A Yes, it's a shared bathroom. Do you want to visit the house?

S Yes, please.

A Are you free at the weekend?

S On Saturday, yes, but not on Sunday.

A OK. I'll ring the landlord now and make an appointment.

Exercise 7 4.07 page 99

- 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F

Transcript

See exercise 6.

Exercise 8 page 99

(Possible answer)

You can probably make friends easily and share the bills. You probably can't spend much time alone. You probably have to cook for others and share the housework. You probably have to share a living room. You probably don't have to be very tidy.

9D Grammar

Present perfect (negative and interrogative)

Exercise 1 4.08 page 100

- 1 received 2 tidied 3 hoovered 4 done 5 finished
6 done

Exercise 2 page 100

Negative No, I haven't. She hasn't done anything! I haven't finished decorating Uncle Mike's birthday cake yet. But I haven't done my homework yet.

Interrogative And have you hoovered the living room yet? What has she done to help?

- 1 haven't 2 hasn't 3 Have 4 haven't 5 Has

Exercise 3 page 100

- 2 Has Mum received a text from Uncle Mike? Yes, she has.
3 Has Jake tidied his bedroom? Yes, he has.
4 Has Jake hoovered the living room? No, he hasn't.
5 Has Jake finished his homework? No, he hasn't.
6 Has Mum finished decorating the birthday cake? No, she hasn't.

For further practice of the present perfect negative and interrogative:

Grammar Builder 9D page 140

- 5 1 I haven't seen that film. 2 Jo hasn't forgotten Molly's phone number. 3 James and Emily haven't learnt Spanish. 4 We haven't had breakfast.
5 You haven't finished your project. 6 It hasn't stopped raining. 7 The cat hasn't caught a mouse.
- 6 2 Have you heard the weather forecast for tomorrow? No, I haven't.
3 Has Evie written any emails today? No, she hasn't.
4 Have Ruby and Zack answered any questions in class today? Yes, they have.
5 Have we bought our tickets for the concert on Saturday? No, we haven't.
6 Has Chloe posted a photo of me on her Facebook page? Yes, she has.
7 Have Aisha and Muhammad replied to your email? No, they haven't.
8 Have you found your keys? Yes, I have.
- 7 2 I've already done it. 3 I've already watched it.
4 I've already apologised to him. 5 I've already bought one. 6 I've already done it.
- 8 3 They haven't seen the paintings in the National Gallery yet.
4 They haven't walked along Oxford Street yet.
5 They've had a meal in Chinatown.
6 They've bought tickets for a musical.
7 They've taken a ride on the London Eye.
8 They haven't visited Buckingham Palace yet.
- 9 2 Have they taken a boat trip on the Thames yet? Yes, they have.
3 Have they seen the paintings in the National Gallery yet? No, they haven't.
4 Have they walked along Oxford Street yet? No, they haven't.
5 Have they had a meal in Chinatown yet? Yes, they have.
6 Have they bought tickets for a musical yet? Yes, they have.
7 Have they taken a ride on the London Eye yet? Yes, they have.
8 Have they visited Buckingham Palace yet? No, they haven't.

Exercise 4 page 100

I've already tidied it. And have you hoovered the living room yet? I haven't finished decorating Uncle Mike's birthday cake yet. But I haven't done my homework yet.

Exercise 5 page 100

They haven't hoovered the living room yet. They've already baked a cake. They haven't decorated the cake yet. They haven't prepared dinner yet. They've already changed the beds.

Exercise 6 page 100

Have they hoovered the living room yet? No, they haven't.
Have they baked a cake yet? Yes, they have.
Have they decorated the cake yet? No, they haven't.
Have they prepared dinner yet? No, they haven't.
Have they changed the beds? Yes, they have.

9E Word Skills

do, make, have, take, bring

Exercise 1 page 101

(Possible answer)

This is the bedroom of a teenage girl. The girl is sitting on her bed and using her laptop. The room is quite untidy: there are clothes, a plastic bag and other things on the floor, on the bed and on the desk.

Exercise 2 4.09 page 101

Harriet helps the most with the housework. Marvin helps the least.

Exercise 3 page 101

3 homework 4 the washing up 5 the cleaning
6 the shopping 7 my best 8 nothing 9 the dinner
10 our beds 11 breakfast 12 arguments 13 ages
14 the bus 15 the rubbish out

Exercise 4 page 101

1 take 2 made 3 have 4 do 5 take 6 Do
7 made 8 have 9 have 10 take

Exercise 5 page 101

1 take 2 bring 3 bring 4 Take 5 bring 6 take

9F Reading

In the middle of nowhere

Exercise 1 page 102

(Possible answer)

Palmerston Island is beautiful and peaceful. It's in the middle of the Pacific Ocean, so it's very remote. It's a tropical island, so the ocean around it is warm. The beaches have got beautiful white sand. There are a lot of palm trees on the island.

Exercise 3 page 102

A things B place C people D place E place
F situation G situation

Exercise 4 page 102

1 D 2 C 3 A 4 E 5 G

Exercise 5 4.10 page 102

A (frozen) fish B (extra) C the families on Palmerston
D Palmerston Island E Rarotonga F (extra)
G getting a university education

Exercise 6 page 103

- 1 It's dangerous because of the rocks. (These have caused hundreds of boats to sink.)
- 2 There are six buildings.
- 3 They usually receive supplies twice a year.
- 4 They only have access to the internet for one or two hours a day and they can't always get a mobile phone signal.
- 5 The population has dropped from 300 to 62.

Exercise 7 page 103

1 e 2 a 3 f 4 c 5 b 6 d

9G Speaking

Photo comparison

Exercise 1 page 104

Photo 1: bed, posters, bookcase, stool, desk

Photo 2: bed, lamp, chest of drawers, rug

Exercise 2 page 104

Opposites bright – dark; comfortable – uncomfortable;
large – small; tidy – untidy

(Possible answers)

Photo 1 bright, comfortable, large, relaxing, tidy

Photo 2 bright, comfortable, cosy, relaxing, small, tidy

For further practice of adjectives to describe rooms: Vocabulary Builder 9G page 121

1 1 bright 2 clean 3 comfortable 4 cosy
5 dark 6 dirty 7 large 8 modern
9 old-fashioned 10 relaxing 11 small 12 tidy
13 uncomfortable 14 untidy

Exercise 3 4.11 page 104

Speaker 1 follows the advice better. He gives more details and includes some description of clothing. It is also easier to follow what he is saying.

Transcript

- 1 Both photos show bedrooms, and you can see teenagers in both photos. The bedroom in the first photo is quite bright, and there are two teenage boys in it. I can see a bed, a desk and a bookcase. There's a laptop on the desk. The two boys are sitting in front of the desk. The boy in the brown T-shirt is playing the guitar and looking at the laptop. Perhaps he's reading some music on the screen. The boy in the white T-shirt is looking at the laptop and smiling. It looks as if they're having a good time. In the second photo, the bedroom looks smaller. I can see a bed, a chest of drawers, a lamp and a rug. There's a laptop on the rug. In the first photo, the boys are using the laptop, but in the second photo, the girl isn't using it. She's using her phone. She's probably listening to music. I would say that she's got homework but she isn't doing it!
- 2 Both photos show teenagers. The first photo shows two boys in a bedroom, whereas the second photo shows a girl in a bedroom. In the first photo, a boy is playing the guitar and

his friend is listening. In the second photo, a girl is using a laptop and listening to music on her phone at the same time. In both photos, the teenagers are smiling. In the first photo, the teenagers are sitting on chairs, but in the second photo, the girl is sitting on the floor. I like both bedrooms, but I think I prefer the second one. It looks cosier and warmer.

Exercise 4 4.11 page 104

- Speaker 1** In the first photo ..., but in the second photo ...; You can see ... in both photos. Both photos show ...; It looks as if ...; I would say that ...; Perhaps he ...
Speaker 2 The first photo shows ..., whereas the second photo shows ...; Both photos show ...; In the first photo ..., but in the second photo ...

Transcript

See exercise 3.

9H Writing

A description

Exercise 1 page 105

Model text A matches the photo because it is a small, light, modern bedroom with a desk and chair.

Exercise 3 page 105

Both texts: a) paragraph 2; b) paragraph 1; c) paragraph 3

Exercise 4 page 105

Model text A It's a great location because it's right in the middle of the city. The room is a bit small although it's very light. In the living room, we have a big 3D TV, so we often lie on the sofas and watch films in the evenings.

Model text B It's extremely cosy in the winter because we always light the fire in the living room. Your bedroom will be the one at the back of the house, so you'll have an amazing view of the countryside. We've got a TV, although we don't watch it much.

Exercise 5 page 105

1 because 2 although 3 so 4 so 5 although

Exercise 6 page 105

fairly modern a bit small / remote very light
really relaxing not very expensive extremely cosy

For further practice of modifiers:

Vocabulary Builder 9H page 121

- 3 Make the adjective stronger really, very Make the adjective weaker fairly, not very, pretty, quite, rather
4 (Possible answers) 1 very 2 fairly 3 a bit
4 really 5 quite 6 not very

Listening

Exercise 3 page 106

Summary 3

Exercise 4 4.12 page 106

1 C 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 C

Transcript

Narrator Imagine your parents have just told you that you're going to move house. Not only that, but you're going to move to a different town and start going to a new school. How would you feel? Moving house can be exciting, but it is also one of the most difficult events in a person's life. People often feel sad about leaving their old home, and worried about starting a new life somewhere else. Caitlin, Ahmed and Josie have all moved to new towns in the last three months. How's it been for you, Caitlin?

Girl I moved here with my family nearly two months ago. The new house is great, and my bedroom's really cosy and comfortable. But I do feel a bit sad sometimes. I think about my old school quite a lot. I haven't been back to visit yet.

N Maybe you will soon. What about you, Ahmed?

Boy We only moved here three weeks ago. It's the holidays, so I haven't started my new school yet. I hope it'll be OK. The new house is quite nice. I didn't like the colour of my bedroom. It was green and really dark so I painted it. It's white now, much better.

N That sounds good. OK, tell us about your experience, Josie.

G We left our old house about a month ago. I really didn't want to move. But actually it's been OK. I speak to my old friends every week, but I've made some good friends here too. Most of them are school friends, but the girl next door is really nice as well. We've spent some time together and have a lot in common.

N That sounds good. Everybody's different, of course, but it seems like there are two important things to do when you move house: the first is to understand that moving house is a big and difficult event, the other is to find positive things about your new home.

Use of English

Exercise 5 page 107

1 make 2 have 3 do 4 share 5 take

Exercise 6 page 107

1 a 2 've / have 3 haven't 4 Has 5 Will 6 at
7 do 8 made 9 about 10 just

Speaking

Exercise 7 page 107

Positive attractive cosy light relaxing
Negative awful ugly uncomfortable untidy

Writing

Exercise 9 page 107

1 on 2 nearby 3 upstairs 4 at 5 in 6 next

Exercise 10 page 107

(Model answer)

My grandmother lives in a beautiful house in the countryside in the south of England. It isn't very big, but it's cosy. Downstairs there's a kitchen and a bright living room. Upstairs there are two bedrooms and a bathroom. Outside there's a small garden with lots of flowers. I go to her house during the school holidays. I went last summer for a week. We went to the park, the cinema and the beach. We also visited her sister, my great-aunt.

5 Exam Skills Trainer

Reading

Exercise 1 page 106

1 Paragraphs 1, 4 and 5 2 Paragraph 5 3 Paragraph 5

Exercise 2 page 106

1 B 2 D 3 A 4 F 5 E

1 The Royal Family

Exercise 1 page 108

The photos show: (top, top row) Michael Middleton, Pippa Middleton, James Middleton, Carole Middleton, Prince Charles, Camilla, Duchess of Cornwall, Prince Philip (bottom row) Prince William, Prince George, Kate, Duchess of Cambridge, Princess Charlotte, Queen Elizabeth II (right) Kate and Prince George

Exercise 2 page 108

1 a 2 a 3 b 4 b 5 b 6 a

Exercise 3 page 108

1 Queen Elizabeth II 2 Charles 3 William 4 George

Exercise 4 4.13 page 108

- 1 His grandmother is Queen Elizabeth II.
- 2 They live in Norfolk, in the east of England.
- 3 He's an air ambulance pilot.
- 4 He has dinner with them and then reads stories to them.
- 5 She buys it at the local supermarket.
- 6 She likes cooking, walking their dog and playing with her children.

Exercise 5 page 108

busy – quiet cheap – expensive old – young sad – happy starts – finishes west – east

Exercise 6 4.14 page 108

A 2 B 1 C 1 D 2 E 3 F 3

Transcript

Interviewer What do you think of the royal family?

A Well, I like the Queen. She works really hard and I think she does a wonderful job. She's good for the country and she's good for tourism. Lots of people come to Britain to visit Buckingham Palace. And she's always very calm. She doesn't smile very often, but I like that!

I What do you think of the royal family?

B I love them. They're like film stars. I often read stories about them in magazines and newspapers. But are the stories true? I don't know, but I enjoy reading them! I like to see photos of them too, especially Kate, William and their family.

I What do you think of the royal family?

C I really don't like them. Prince Philip always says silly things and he's sometimes quite rude. And Prince Harry doesn't behave well. He does silly things. I'm not sure what they do. Do they work? Do they have jobs? I don't know. The queen is OK, but I don't think we need them. They are old-fashioned and they spend a lot of money!

2 The University of Oxford

Exercise 1 page 109

- In photo A, the student is in her college room.
 In photo B, the students are in the library.
 In photo C, the students are in the dining hall.
 In photo D, the students are at their degree ceremony.

Exercise 2 4.15 page 109

1 E 2 B 3 C 4 A 5 D

Exercise 3 page 109

1 postgraduate student 2 undergraduate
 3 population 4 prime minister 5 lecture 6 gown

Exercise 4 4.16 page 109

Speakers 3 and 5 are not from the UK.

Transcript

1 It's the same for all my family. We all go to private school and then after that we study at Oxford University. My grandfather, my father, my uncle as well ... and now me. All to the same college – Queen's. After that, I'm not sure. I think I'd like a job in the government somewhere.

2 Oxford – Wow! It's amazing. My parents are so proud of me. I come from a tiny village in Scotland. Not many people from there go to university ... but to study in Oxford ... it's incredible! I can't wait to go!

3 My first degree is in maths from the University of Berlin. But I am really interested in working for the European Union. So now I'm in Oxford and I have to study really hard to get my postgraduate degree in economics. I'm in my second year now. It's not easy, but I'm enjoying it.

4 I'm really pleased to be here in Oxford. What a great place to study! But I'm not looking forward to the first few weeks: meeting new people, making friends, the work. I hope my course isn't really difficult.

5 I'm from China and I'm an undergraduate student here at Oxford. I love it! There are about a thousand other Chinese students at Oxford University, so I have lots of friends from home and I don't get lonely.

Exercise 5 4.16 page 109

A 4 B 2 C – D 3 E 5 F 1

Transcript

See exercise 4.

3 Teens and their money

Exercise 2 page 110

1 F 2 T 3 T

Exercise 3 4.17 page 110

1 do 2 it 3 on 4 of 5 aren't 6 in 7 of 8 can

Exercise 4 page 110

Item c is the best summary.

Exercise 5 4.18 page 110

Andy and Dan speakers buy video games.

Transcript

Andy I don't spend much money on clothes. I think fashion is really boring! I buy jeans, T-shirts and sweatshirts, but I never buy smart clothes because I never need to wear very smart clothes. I spend most of my money on apps and video games. I'm a big fan of games!

Beth I spend money on clothes – but not very often. Some of my friends really spend a lot, but not me. When I buy new clothes, I look for something cheap. I like fashionable clothes and I like reading about the latest fashions in magazines. But I don't buy them. I think they're too expensive.

Dan I often meet my friends in town three or four times a week. We sit and chat in Starbucks or McDonald's, or sometimes we go to the cinema. It's actually quite expensive. But a cup of coffee can last a long time! I also play a lot of video games with my friends, so I buy apps and games for my tablet too.

Lisa I don't like shops, so I buy things from shopping websites. I need a new tablet, so I'm going to look on eBay. Prices are usually much lower than on normal shopping websites, and you can find some really interesting things.

Exercise 6 4.18 page 110

a Dan b Beth c Andy d – e Lisa

Transcript

See exercise 5.

4 British food

Exercise 1 page 111

- A fish and chips B roast beef and Yorkshire pudding
C strawberries and cream D sausages and mashed potato

Exercise 2 4.19 page 111

1 on 2 the 3 or 4 the 5 of 6 of

Exercise 3 page 111

- 1 Indian and Chinese
2 bacon, eggs, sausages, tomatoes, mushroom and toast
3 bangers and mash
4 a hot pie
5 watching tennis at Wimbledon
6 by the sea

Exercise 4 4.20 page 111

simple, fresh

Transcript

Presenter ... and in the studio today is Damien Rogers from the British Food Magazine. Now, Damien, I want to ask you about Modern British Cuisine. What exactly is it? And how is it different from traditional British cooking?

Damien Well, British food is always changing. We remember the 1960s and 70s for an interest in the cuisine of other countries. And the 80s we remember for nouvelle cuisine: beautiful food but very small meals!

P Yes, I remember nouvelle cuisine – and feeling very hungry after meals!

D But in the 80s we also see cooks starting to do Modern British Cuisine. In Modern British Cuisine, cooks take a traditional recipe, and they change it. They don't change it much, but maybe they add a new spice or a new herb, or they use a different vegetable.

P You mean, giving the traditional meal a new look or a new taste.

D Exactly. For example, traditionally duck comes with an orange sauce. But in Modern British Cuisine duck often comes with cherries or pistachio nuts.

P I see. And I understand the quality of the ingredients is important too.

D Yes, it is! We have great ingredients here in Britain: wonderful beef, lamb and fish and delicious, fresh vegetables. Chefs want to show the quality of the ingredients. Because of that, modern British chefs like to cook simple recipes – but they do them really well.

P OK, so, simple, tasty cooking.

D Exactly. And the ingredients have to be fresh. Chefs get the ingredients locally because they want them to be as fresh as possible. Many restaurants tell their customers how far their food travels and offer a 15 or 25 mile menu.

P (surprised) Really? How interesting! Damien Rogers, thank you very much ...

Exercise 5 4.20 page 111

1 b 2 a 3 c 4 c

Transcript

See exercise 4.

5 New York

Exercise 2 4.21 page 112

1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 F

Transcript

1 False. The capital of the USA is Washington, D.C.

2 True. There are about 8.5 million people in New York.

3 True. People speak around 800 different languages in New York.

4 False. The Golden Gate Bridge is in San Francisco.

5 True. The Empire State Building is in New York.

6 True. The United Nations Headquarters is in New York.

7 False. The White House is in Washington D.C.

Exercise 3 4.22 page 112

1 B 2 F 3 D 4 E 5 A

Exercise 4 4.23 page 112

1 the New York Marathon 2 over 50,000 3 next week

Transcript

Presenter Today, I'm in the city. I'm meeting some people who are running in the New York Marathon. Right now I'm with Gloria Estrada. Hi Gloria!

Gloria Hi!

P Gloria, are you from New York?

G No. I'm from Bogotá, in Colombia, South America. But now I'm an American citizen and my home is New York.

P Well, that's great. And you obviously like running!

G Yes, I love it! I run every day.

P And is this your first marathon?

G No, it isn't. It's my fourth. But it's my first marathon in New York. You have to be older than eighteen to run here. And I'm just eighteen. I'm really looking forward to it.

P What do you enjoy about marathon running?

G Well, there are over 50,000 runners in the race. It's the biggest marathon in the world! And we're all very different. We come from lots of different countries. It's a great feeling!

P Isn't it very tiring?

G Yes, of course. It's 42 kilometres! But we're all tired. In the race, you don't know anything about the person next to you, but that doesn't matter. We run together and we feel together.

P You're saying it's a special feeling.

G Yes. Yes. And there are thousands of people on the streets who watch the marathon. They shout and cheer and clap. There's always a lot of energy and a fantastic atmosphere. So a marathon is special. And for me, this marathon is very special.

P Oh? Why's that?

G Well, I'm from South America, but New York is my new home. And next week I'm running in the marathon! I am beginning to feel like a real New Yorker, to feel that this is my home.

P Well, that's great. Good luck!

G Thanks!

Exercise 5 4.23 page 112

1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 F 6 T

Transcript

See exercise 4.

6 Yellowstone National Park

Exercise 1 page 113

1 canyon 2 extraordinary 3 expedition 4 variety
5 pond 6 protect

Exercise 3 4.24 page 113

1 extraordinary 2 ponds 3 variety 4 canyons
5 expeditions 6 protect

Exercise 4 page 113

1 T 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 F

Exercise 5 page 113

Exercise 6 4.25 page 113

Transcript

Presenter Here in the studio with me is Jackie Whelan – a woman with an interesting story about her trip to Yellowstone National Park. Tell me, Jackie, what happened?
Jackie Well, I was in Yellowstone, deep in the forest. I walked out of the trees and there was a bear – right in front of me! It was quite close – only twenty or thirty metres away.

P Oh, no!

J Well, I'm a careful person. Everyone knows there are bears at Yellowstone. I hoped not to meet one, but I wanted to be prepared. So when I arrived there, I looked at all the information about what to do if you meet a bear. But, of course, when it actually happened, I just wanted to turn and run!

P But you stopped yourself ...

J Yes. I remembered one important thing: that it isn't a good idea to run away from a bear. Bears are so quick. So I stopped and I stayed very still. Then the bear looked up – and looked straight at me.

P Uh-oh.

J Exactly. Then I realised how close I was to the bear. I also realised he wasn't a happy bear.

P So what next?

J Well, he started hitting the ground with his paw. I could see he was very nervous, angry perhaps. So after a few minutes I tried moving backwards very slowly.

P And?

J And suddenly he started running straight towards me!

P Oh, no! How awful!

J Absolutely. Anyway, sometimes they stop running at you. And sometimes they turn and run off at the last moment. But not this bear. He moved faster and closer.

P The bear continued to run at you?

J Straight at me, yes. Then just as it reached me, I turned and dropped to the ground. I placed my hands over the back of my neck, my elbows protecting my face. I was flat on my face. I tried not to move. And the bear was right there by me.

P Oh, no! Were you frightened?

J Yes, of course! Well, the bear moved around me. I could feel it smelling me. And then finally it walked off into the forest. I waited about five minutes. I looked round. It wasn't there any longer. So I left. Slowly.

P What an incredible experience!

J Well, yes. My heart slowed down to its normal speed after about half an hour!

Exercise 7 4.25 page 113

1 a 2 a 3 c 4 b

Transcript

See exercise 6.

7 British scientists

Exercise 1 page 114

Exercise 2 4.26 page 114

1 grandmother 2 school 3 1661 4 1667
5 home 6 Mathematics 7 1687 8 1727

Exercise 3 page 114

1 was 2 got 3 went 4 began 5 fell 6 said
7 became 8 wrote

Exercise 4 4.27 page 114

The best summary is 2.

Transcript

Presenter Today, I am with Simon Humphreys, Professor of Astronomy at a university in London. We are talking about Caroline Herschel, the astronomer. Simon, where was Caroline Herschel born?

Professor Humphreys She was actually born in Germany, but she spent most of her life in Britain. She was the sister of the astronomer William Herschel. He was born in 1738 and was twelve years older than his sister.

P He worked in Britain too?

PH Yes, he came to Britain when he was nineteen and his sister joined him fifteen years later, in 1752.

P And she worked with him, did she?

PH Yes, at first she did the cooking and cleaning for him, but she soon became his assistant. She wrote down the results of his observations.

P He's more famous than she is, isn't he?

PH Yes. That's because he discovered the planet Uranus in 1782. It was the first planet to be discovered using a telescope, and William built the telescope himself. But Caroline helped him – he couldn't do it without her.

P And she discovered a planet too, didn't she?

PH Not a planet, but she discovered eight comets and also fourteen nebulae.

P Can you explain to the listeners what a nebula is?

PH Yes, a nebula is an enormous cloud of dust between stars. They are sometimes hundreds of light years across, and sometimes stars form inside them.

P What else did Caroline do?

PH She was very good at maths and successfully calculated distances to planets and stars.

P That is impressive.

PH Yes, she received a number of important awards, including the Gold Medal from the Royal Astronomical Society in 1828.

P She was quite old by then.

PH Yes, she was 77, but scientists from all over Europe were still coming to see her to ask for advice. And she lived another 20 years and finally died at the age of 97.

P What a fascinating woman.

PH Yes, especially as in those days it was extremely difficult for women to have a career of their own.

P Thank you, Simon.

Exercise 5 4.27 page 114

- 1 Caroline was twelve years younger than William.
- 2 She did the cooking and cleaning for him.
- 3 She discovered eight comets and fourteen nebulae.
- 4 She successfully calculated distances to planets and stars.
- 5 She was 97 when she died.

Transcript

See exercise 4.

8 Football

Exercise 2 page 115

Karen Flory

Exercise 3 page 115

- 1 league
- 2 club
- 3 football fan
- 4 kit
- 5 pitch
- 6 salary

Exercise 5 4.29 page 115

Sentence 1

Transcript

Presenter My guest today is Nick Wheeler, a sports journalist. He writes about women's football. Welcome, Nick.

Nick Thank you.

P Now, tell me, when did women start playing football? The first Women's World Cup was in 1991, wasn't it?

N Yes, that's right. But the first women's clubs started before 1900.

P Really?

N Yes, the first match was in 1895. And in those days thousands of people went to watch women playing football. For example, in December 1920, 53,000 fans saw a match between Preston and St Helens in the north of England.

P Wow, that's more people than at most Premier League games today!

N Yes. But one year later, the FA, the English Football Association, banned women from men's clubs.

P You mean they stopped women using the men's pitches?

N Yes. Their opinion was, football is a man's game and women shouldn't play it.

P That's very sexist.

N Yes. And a lot of women stopped playing football.

P When did that change?

N In the 1950s and 1960s. Then in 1969, the Women's Football Association started. And three years later the women's England team played their first match, against Scotland.

P Did they win?

N Well, it was 2–0 to Scotland at half time, but in the end England won 3–2.

P And now we have a women's World Cup too.

N Yes, as you said, that started in 1991.

P And which is the best team?

N Not England, I'm afraid! Germany and Japan are very good, but the best team is the USA. They came first, second or third in every World Cup between 1991 and 2015.

P What about money? How much do women footballers earn?

N They don't earn as much as men. An English Premier League footballer earns more in one week than a woman footballer earns in a year!

P But that's because men's football is more popular ...

N Yes, the men's game gets lots of money from television companies. But the women's game is becoming more popular. Fifty-three thousand fans watched the world cup final between the USA and Japan in 2015, and 24 million Americans watched it on TV. So, I hope that the players are going to start earning more money.

P Yes, I hope so too. Nick, thank you for talking to me today.

Exercise 6 4.29 page 115

- 1 1895
- 2 1991
- 3 1921
- 4 1969

9 The White House

Exercise 1 page 116

The President of the United States lives in the White House. It's in the U.S. in Washington D.C.

Exercise 2 4.30 page 116

- 1 a
- 2 c
- 3 b
- 4 b
- 5 c
- 6 a

Exercise 3 page 116

1 George Washington 2 John Adams 3 They started calling it the White House in 1901. 4 The Oval Office has been the president's office since 1909. 5 It's got a swimming pool, a tennis court and a jogging track. 6 30,000 people visit the White House each week.

Exercise 4 page 116

- 1 wall
- 2 ceiling
- 3 window
- 4 fireplace
- 5 clock
- 6 painting
- 7 statue

Exercise 5 4.31 page 116

- 1 the Roosevelt Room
- 2 the Cabinet Room
- 3 the secretary's office
- 4 the Oval Office

Transcript

OK. This room we are in now is called the Roosevelt Room. The room is named after two US Presidents, Theodore Roosevelt and Franklin D Roosevelt. They were actually cousins. For a time it was called the 'Fish Room' because Franklin Roosevelt used it as an office and kept an aquarium in here. And in fact later, President John F Kennedy had a huge fish on the wall as well. But then in 1969 President Nixon changed the name. He hung portraits of the two Roosevelts on the walls and they have been here ever since.

You can see them over there and over here. That one is Theodore Roosevelt and this one is Franklin D Roosevelt. So this is the Roosevelt Room.

Next, we move along the corridor and into the Cabinet Room. This is where the President meets with his staff. Notice the fireplace at the end of the room and the busts on each side of it: that is George Washington, the first President, on one side, and Benjamin Franklin on the other. The large table in the centre of the room was a gift from President Nixon.

Now, we go through the office of the President's secretary to the most famous room of all. And here we are in the Oval Office, the office of the President. You can see the three large south-facing windows. And over here to the left this door leads outside to the Rose Garden. Look up at the ceiling and there is a medallion with the American eagle. That has been there since 1934 when Franklin Roosevelt renovated these offices. One of my favourite pieces in this room is the grandfather clock. It's over 200 years old and has been in here since the 1970s.

Each President chooses art for this room from the White House collection. Different Presidents choose different portraits to have on the walls. Most Presidents have hung a portrait of George Washington. As you can see, the current President has also chosen busts of Abraham Lincoln and Martin Luther King Jr.

Before we go, just take a look at the desk. That is one of six desks ...

Exercise 6  4.31 page 116

- 1 the Roosevelt Room
- 2 President Nixon
- 3 the Cabinet Room
- 4 the President's secretary's office
- 5 because it's 200 years old and is his favourite pieces
- 6 each president

Transcript

See exercise 5.



Workbook answer keys and transcripts

Introduction

IA Vocabulary

Personal information

Exercise 1 page 4

- 1 What's your name? 2 How do you spell that?
 3 How old are you? 4 Where are you from?
 (Students' own answers)

Exercise 2 page 4

- 1 Argentina 2 Brazil 3 Croatia 4 France
 5 Germany 6 Hungary 7 Italy 8 Japan 9 Poland
 10 Russia 11 Spain 12 Turkey 13 Ukraine 14 UK

Exercise 3 1.02 page 4

- 2 Emin is from Turkey 3 Mariana is from Brazil
 4 Dominik is from Ukraine 5 Nozomi is from Japan

Transcript

- 1 Boy Hi! What's your name?
 Girl Viktoria.
 B How do you spell that?
 G With a K. V-I-K-T-O-R-I-A.
 B Great. Thanks. And where are you from, Viktoria?
 G I'm from Hungary.
- 2 Girl Hi! What's your name?
 Boy Emin.
 G How do you spell that?
 B Emin? That's easy! E-M-I-N.
 G Thanks. And where are you from?
 B I'm from Turkey.
- 3 Boy Hi! What's your name?
 Girl Mariana.
 B How do you spell that?
 G M-A-R-I-A-N-A.
 B OK. And where are you from, Mariana?
 G I'm from Brazil.
- 4 Girl Hi! What's your name?
 Boy Dominik.
 G How do you spell that?
 B D-O-M-I-N-I-K.
 G Thanks. Where are you from?
 B I'm from Ukraine.
- 5 Boy Hi! What's your name?
 Girl Nozomi.
 B How do you spell that?
 G N-O-Z-O-M-I.
 B Great. And where are you from, Nozomi?
 G I'm from Japan.

Exercise 4 1.03 page 4

- 1 XC60 2 LG G3 3 B52 4 M62 5 KTM 1190 6 HP 15n 230 US

Transcript

- 1 This car is a Volvo XC60.
 2 This phone is an LG G3.
 3 This aircraft is a B52.
 4 This road is the M62 in England.
 5 This motorbike is a KTM 1190.
 6 This is an HP 15n 230 US laptop.

IB Grammar

be and have got

Exercise 1 page 5

- 2 She isn't from Croatia. 3 You are at school. 4 I'm a student. 5 We aren't hungry. 6 You aren't on holiday. 7 I'm not 27 years old. 8 He isn't from Spain.

Exercise 2 page 5

- 1 Are you seventeen? No, I'm not.
 2 Are they from Britain? Yes, they are.
 3 Is it cold today? No, it isn't.
 4 Are we in an English lesson? Yes, we are.
 5 Is she very tall? No, she isn't.

Exercise 3 page 5

- 1 have / haven't got 2 have / haven't got
 3 has / hasn't got 4 have / haven't got
 5 have / haven't got 6 has / hasn't got

Exercise 4 page 5

- 1 Has Liam got a skateboard? Yes, he has.
 2 Has Zoe got a skateboard? No, she hasn't.
 3 Have Liam and Zoe got smartphones? Yes, they have.
 4 Has Liam got a dictionary? No, he hasn't.
 5 Have Liam and Zoe got bikes? No, they haven't.

Exercise 5 page 5

- 1 is / 's 2 am / 'm 3 are 4 'm not 5 are 6 have got / 've got 7 are 8 is 9 have got / 've got
 10 have got / 've got 11 has got / 's got 12 haven't got
 13 have got / 've got 14 is / 's 15 Have 16 got

IC Speaking

Talking about ability and asking for permission

Exercise 1 page 6

- 1 piano 2 guitar 3 drums 4 flute 5 violin
 6 clarinet 7 saxophone 8 trumpet

Exercise 2 page 6

- 2 Marie can speak Chinese. 3 Mason can ride a bike.
 4 Ted and Sophie can play football. 5 Marie and Sophie can't play the violin. 6 Ted can't speak Chinese.

Exercise 3 page 6

- 2 Can Marie play the violin? No, she can't.
 3 Can Sophie and Mason ride a bike? Yes, they can.
 4 Can Marie and Mason speak Chinese? Yes, they can.
 5 Can Mason play football? No, he can't.

Exercise 4 page 6

- 2 b Can I borrow a pencil? 3 f Can I borrow £1? 4 d Can I copy your answer? 5 c Can I share your book?
 6 e Can I use your dictionary?

Exercise 5 page 6

- 2 I can/can't sing.
- 3 I can/can't dance.
- 4 I can/can't ski
- 5 I can/can't ride a horse.
- 6 I can/can't speak French.

ID Grammar**Articles: *the, a / an, some; this / that / these / those*****Exercise 1** page 7

- 1 a bin
- 2 a blackboard
- 3 a calculator
- 4 some chairs
- 5 a computer
- 6 some cupboards
- 7 a desk
- 8 an eraser
- 9 an exercise book
- 10 an interactive whiteboard
- 11 a pen
- 12 some pencils
- 13 a pencil case
- 14 a pencil sharpener
- 15 some rulers
- 16 a schoolbag
- 17 some shelves

Exercise 2 page 7

- 1 some, an, a, The
- 2 some, a, a, the
- 3 some, a, a, The, the
- 4 a, an, The, the
- 5 some, the

Exercise 3 page 7

- 2 There's **an** elephant and **some** giraffes at our local zoo.
- 3 We've got **an** apple tree in our garden.
- 4 I've got **a** phone and an MP3 player. I've got the phone with me, but **the** MP3 player is at home.
- 5 There are **some** exercise books and **a** dictionary on my table.

Exercise 4 page 7

- 2 This is a calculator.
- 3 That is a schoolbag.
- 4 These are pencils.
- 5 These are books.
- 6 Those are shoes.

Unit 1 Family and friends**1A Vocabulary****Family****Exercise 1** page 8

- 2 uncle
- 3 grandparents
- 4 sister
- 5 grandfather
- 6 cousins
- 7 niece
- 8 granddaughter
- 9 nephew

Exercise 2 page 8

- 1 mother's / father's mother
- 2 mother's / father's sister
- 3 brother's / sister's daughters

Exercise 3 page 8

- 1 mother's, b
- 2 sister's, a
- 3 son's, b
- 4 father's, wife's, b

Exercise 4 page 8

- 1 a
- 2 b
- 3 b

Exercise 5 page 8

- 2 Ben is Anna's cousin.
- 3 Joanna is Rob's grandmother.
- 4 Mark is Ben's uncle.
- 5 Rob is Lucy's nephew.
- 6 Zak is Emma's husband.
- 7 Sam is Andy's father.
- 8 Amelia is Ellie's mother.
- 9 Anna is Ellie's sister.
- 10 Sam is Rob's grandfather.

Exercise 6 1.04 page 8

Anna

Transcript

Tim That's a nice photo. Is that your dad?

Anna No, it isn't. That's Zak, my uncle. He's my mum's brother. And that's his son, Ben.

T So Ben is your cousin.

A That's right. And Ben has got a sister, Grace.

T And is that Grace in the photo?

A No, that's me! But that isn't my mum, it's my aunt, Emma. She's Zak's wife.

T Where are your brother and sister?

A My brother isn't there. Ellie is behind the camera.

Exercise 7 1.04 page 8

Left to right: Emma, Anna, Ben, Zak

Transcript

See exercise 6.

1B Grammar**Present simple (affirmative)****Exercise 1** page 9

- 1 come, live, study, teaches
- 2 *The Simpsons*: go, works
- 3 *Friends*: share, live, visits
- 4 *How I Met Your Mother*: lives, goes, meets
- 5 *Two and a Half Men*: lives, comes, visits

Exercise 2 page 9

- 1 enjoys
- 2 has
- 3 finishes
- 4 studies
- 5 knows
- 6 goes
- 7 uses
- 8 watches

Exercise 3 page 9

- 1 knows
- 2 goes
- 3 uses
- 4 finishes
- 5 watches
- 6 has
- 7 enjoys
- 8 studies

Exercise 4 page 9

- 1 live, speak, speak, works, plays
- 2 live, lives, visits, speaks
- 3 live, go, swim, loves, plays
- 4 live, speak, knows, play, sings, dances
- 5 live, finishes, ride, skateboard, have, works, has

1C Listening**Spelling and pronunciation****Exercise 1** page 10

- 1 tidy
- 2 cook
- 3 wash
- 4 do
- 5 go
- 6 set
- 7 load / unload
- 8 clean
- 9 do

Exercise 2 page 10

- 1 cool
- 2 pool
- 3 foot
- 4 good
- 5 France
- 6 park
- 7 at
- 8 can
- 9 find
- 10 right
- 11 in
- 12 print
- 13 know
- 14 so
- 15 month
- 16 mother
- 17 jeans
- 18 teach
- 19 break
- 20 steak
- 21 June
- 22 music
- 23 bus
- 24 run

Exercise 3 page 10

- 1 soon
- 2 car
- 3 child
- 4 phone
- 5 Sunday

Exercise 4 1.05 page 10

- 1 end
- 2 match
- 3 park
- 4 late
- 5 it

Transcript

- 1 end
- 2 match
- 3 park
- 4 late
- 5 it

Exercise 5 1.06 page 10

1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 F 6 T

Transcript

A Anna What's for dinner, Mum?

M Mum Steak, chips and peas ... Anna, can you unload the dishwasher, please?

A Oh, Mum, can you ask Luke? I'm busy with my maths homework. It's very difficult.

M Anna, it's your job to unload the dishwasher every day. You know Luke loads it after dinner.

A I know, but I tidy my bedroom every day. But is Luke's bedroom tidy? No, it isn't! And I clean the bathroom. But where are Luke's clothes? On the bathroom floor!

M Now, Anna, that isn't very nice. This isn't about Luke. I want you to help me in the kitchen. I'm busy and I'm tired and I need your help. I cook dinner every day, and I hate cooking!

A OK. Sorry, Mum. I'm just worried about my maths homework. I can't do it.

M Well, let me cook dinner first, then I can help you with your homework. Or Luke can help you this evening. He's good at maths.

A OK. But where is Luke?

M He's with Dad.

A And where's Dad?

M At the supermarket!

Exercise 6 page 10

1 same 2 different 3 same (bedroom can also be pronounced 'bedru:m') 4 different 5 same 6 different

1D Grammar

Present simple (negative and interrogative)

Exercise 1 page 11

1 Tom doesn't like ice cream. 2 We don't study geography at school. 3 My parents don't work at the weekend. 4 Josh doesn't play the piano. 5 I don't tidy my bedroom at weekends. 6 My dad doesn't do the washing. 7 My friends and I don't play football after school. 8 Manuela doesn't come from Spain.

Exercise 2 page 11

1 don't live 2 don't understand 3 doesn't watch
4 don't work 5 doesn't ride 6 don't play

Exercise 3 page 11

1 don't know 2 walk 3 like 4 argue 5 doesn't do
6 don't listen 7 doesn't play 8 don't sing

Exercise 4 page 11

1 Does, does 2 Do, don't 3 Do, do 4 Do, do 5 Do,
don't 6 Does, doesn't

Exercise 5 page 11

1 Does your best friend speak Arabic? Yes, he/she does./
No, he/she doesn't.
2 Do you get up early on Sundays? Yes, I do./No, I don't.

3 Does your dad wash the dishes? Yes, he does./No, he
doesn't.

4 Do you and your friends go skateboarding? Yes, we do./
No, we don't.

5 Do you study German at school? Yes, I do./No, I don't.

6 Do your parents drive fast cars? Yes, they do./No, they
don't.

7 Does it rain a lot in your country? Yes, it does./No, it
doesn't.

1E Word Skills

Singular and plural nouns

Exercise 1 page 12

1 -s 2 -es 3 -s, -es 4 -ies 5 -s 6 -ves

Exercise 2 page 12

2 winner – winners 3 actress – actresses 4 dress –
dresses 5 match – matches 6 tattoo – tattoos
7 family – families 8 charity – charities 9 city – cities
10 company – companies 11 boy – boys 12 wife – wives

Exercise 3 page 12

b Rule 5 c Rule 6 d Rule 2 e Rule 3 f Rule 1

Exercise 4 page 12

1 days 2 dictionaries 3 brothers 4 boxes
5 potatoes 6 knives

Exercise 5 page 12

1 child – children, person – people, woman – women
2 clothes 3 tennis

Exercise 6 page 12

1 help 2 water 3 teeth 4 sunglasses 5 jeans 6 men

Exercise 7 page 12

2 halves 3 skis 4 mice 5 sheep 6 roofs

1F Reading

Sibling rivalry

Exercise 1 page 13

1 about 2 to 3 for 4 of 5 in 6 on 7 from 8 with

Exercise 2 page 13

2 e 3 a 4 d 5 b

Exercise 3 page 13

1 D 2 A 3 B 4 C –The extra sentence is E.

1G Speaking

Describing people

Exercise 1 page 14

1 short, dark, glasses 2 fair, beard, moustache

Exercise 2 1.07 page 14

Photo C: 2 She hasn't got long hair. She's got short hair.
3 She hasn't got curly hair. She's got straight hair.

Photo D: 1 She hasn't got medium-length hair. She's got long hair. 2 She hasn't got straight hair. She's got curly hair. 3 She hasn't got dark hair. She's got fair hair.

Transcript

Photo C

- 1 She's got dark hair.
2 She's got long hair.
3 She's got curly hair.

Photo D

- 1 She's got medium-length hair.
2 She's got straight hair.
3 She's got dark hair.

Exercise 4 1.08 page 14

Left to right: Camilla, Marcus, Zoe, George

Transcript

Boy Where's Marcus?

Girl I don't know. Who is Marcus?

B Oh, you don't know him?

G No.

B Oh, there he is.

G Where?

B Over there, at the table.

G With curly, dark hair?

B No, with short, dark hair and a white T-shirt.

G Oh, yes. I see him. He looks nice.

B He is. He's in my class at school. Do you want to meet him?

G Maybe later. So, who's the boy with curly dark hair?

B That's George.

G And who's that next to Marcus? The girl with the long, dark hair.

B There are two girls with long dark hair. The girl on his right is Camilla. And the girl on the other side, next to George, is Zoe.

1H Writing

A personal profile

Exercise 1 page 15

- a creative b friendly c hard-working d honest
e patient f polite g sensible

Exercise 2 page 15

2 My dad isn't English. He's Russian. 3 I've got two brothers. They're ten and twelve. 4 We've got two dogs. They're both black. 5 My mum's a doctor.

Exercise 3 page 15

1 They are twelve and fourteen. 2 It is a large school ...
3 ... but I am not very good! 4 My ambition is to become an actor.

Exercise 4 page 15

- a 4 b 1 c 2 d 3

Exercise 5 page 15

1 to 2 with 3 to 4 in 5 at 6 at

Exercise 6 page 15

1 pet dog, two brothers 2 Westford School, Year 11
3 football and rugby, listen to music 4 become a doctor, travel around the world

Review Unit 1

Exercise 1 page 16

- 1 aunt 2 niece 3 grandmother 4 cousin 5 sister-in-law 6 great-grandmother 7 step-father

Exercise 2 page 16

- 1 go to the supermarket 2 cook dinner 3 set the table
4 do the washing 5 load the dishwasher 6 clean the house

Exercise 3 page 16

- 1 e 2 d 3 f 4 c 5 a 6 b

Exercise 4 page 16

- 1 blue 2 medium-length 3 glasses 4 beard
5 straight 6 good-looking

Exercise 5 page 16

- 1 patient 2 honest 3 polite 4 creative 5 sensible
6 friendly

Exercise 6 page 16

1 Our flat has got six bedrooms. 2 We've got four classes before lunch. 3 Matt has got five shelves in his room.
4 My sister has got three children. 5 I've got two parties this weekend. 6 My friend has got 60 photos on his phone.

Exercise 7 page 16

- 1 lives 2 goes 3 see 4 like 5 rains 6 stay
7 comes 8 win 9 speak 10 helps

Exercise 8 page 17

- 1 do your parents do 2 don't see 3 doesn't work
4 Do you live 5 don't like 6 Do you share 7 does your mum do 8 doesn't like

Exercise 9 page 17

- 1 b 2 a 3 a 4 b 5 a 6 c 7 a 8 b 9 c 10 c

Exam Skills Trainer 1

Exercise 1 page 18

- 1 F 2 T

Exercise 2 page 18

- 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 F

Exercise 3 page 18

- 1 E 2 G 3 C 4 D 5 A 6 B 7 F

Exercise 4 1.09 page 18

- 1 C 2 B 3 F 4 E 5 A 6 G

Transcript

- 1 People often say I'm like my grandfather. They say we've got the same walk. My grandfather always puts his hands in his pockets when he walks, and so do I. Apart from that, I can't see the similarity.
2 I look more like my mum than my dad. Her hair is grey now, but it's still curly, like mine. We've both got the same blue eyes and the same nose too. People say I look like her when she was young.
3 Yeah, I think I'm most like my dad. He's very patient, and so am I. We don't often get angry about things – we try to laugh instead. We're both very tall – and very good-looking, of course!

- 4 I often go out with my cousin, Sarah, and most people think that we're sisters. We look quite similar, I suppose, because we're both quite small and thin. She doesn't like sport though, and I do.
- 5 I've got an older brother, but we don't look anything like each other. He's got fair hair and I'm dark, and we've got completely different personalities. But we both love playing chess!
- 6 I'm more like my aunt than my mum, really. My aunt's a fantastic cook, and I like cooking too. I often watch her when she's in the kitchen and then I make the same thing at home – delicious!

Exercise 5 page 19

1 nephew 2 moustache 3 excited 4 wash

Exercise 6 page 19

1 A 2 A 3 B 4 C 5 B 6 C 7 A 8 B 9 C 10 C

Exercise 7 page 19

- 1 He's very tall – about 190 cm – and he's quite thin.
- 2 He's got short, blond hair and blue eyes.
- 3 He's got a blond beard and moustache.
- 4 His trousers are black and he's got a red T-shirt.

Exercise 9 page 19

1 c, f 2 e, g 3 a, d 4 b, h

Unit 2 School days

2A Vocabulary

Daily routine

Exercise 1 page 20

1 wake 2 get 3 have 4 arrive 5 have 6 leave
7 have 8 go

Exercise 2 page 20

1 quarter past two 2 twenty past seven 3 quarter to six 4 eleven o'clock 5 half past ten 6 five to five
7 ten to four 8 twenty to eight

Exercise 3 1.10 page 20

1 6.45 2 4.00 3 11.10 4 7.55 5 1.30 6 3.25
7 5.15 8 11.40

Transcript

- 1 It's quarter to seven.
- 2 It's four o'clock.
- 3 It's ten past eleven.
- 4 It's five to eight.
- 5 It's half past one.
- 6 It's twenty-five past three.
- 7 It's quarter past five.
- 8 It's twenty to twelve.

Exercise 5 page 20

1 P.E. 2 art and design 3 biology 4 music
5 chemistry 6 I.C.T.

Exercise 6 1.11 page 20

1 history 2 maths 3 R.E. 4 English

Transcript

- 1 Teacher Come in, sit down. Open your books – page 56.
- Tyler What's the topic today?
- Girl I don't know. Let's see ...

Te Today's topic is World War I. What are the dates of World War 1? Anyone?

Ty Ooh ooh ... 1939 to 1945.

Te No, that's World War 2.

2 Teacher Now, write this in your notebooks: x plus thirty-six equals y plus seven.

Tyler x plus thirty-six equals y plus seven.

Te And now write this ...

Ty This is really difficult! When's break time?

Girl At ten o'clock.

3 Tyler Oh, no, I haven't got my books.

Teacher Don't worry. Today, we've got a video.

Ty Oh, good.

Te It's about the festival of Diwali. Which religion is Diwali part of? ... Come on! Is it Christianity? Hinduism? Buddhism?

4 Teacher So, what happens at the end of Shakespeare's *Romeo and Juliet*? Tyler?

Tyler I'm not sure. Do they get married?

Te Er ... well, yes. They get married. But that isn't the end of the play. What happens at the end? Do they live happily ever after?

Ty Yes.

Te Really?

Ty I mean, no. Er ... they die.

Te That's right! They die.

Te OK, that's lunch.

2B Grammar

have to

Exercise 1 page 21

2 have to turn 3 have to be 4 have to wear 5 have to sit 6 have to walk

Exercise 2 page 21

1 doesn't have to 2 have to 3 don't have to 4 doesn't have to 5 have to 6 have to 7 don't have to 8 have to

Exercise 3 page 21

1 have to have 2 have to go 3 have to study 4 don't have to take 5 has to work 6 don't have to do
7 don't have to write

Exercise 4 page 21

2 Does, have to. Yes, he does. 3 Do, have to. Yes, they do. 4 Does, have to. Yes, he does. 5 Does, have to. No, he doesn't. 6 Does, have to. No, she doesn't.

2C Listening

Unusual schools

Exercise 1 page 22

1 study 2 wear 3 punish 4 chew 5 go 6 do 7 wear

Exercise 2 1.12 page 22

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 c 6 c 7 b 8 b

Transcript

1 quarter to eleven

2 ten to twelve in the morning

3 half past six

4 twenty-five to eight

5 the twenty-second of April twenty ten

6 the fifth of September twenty twenty

7 July the thirty-first two thousand and two

8 February the sixteenth twenty sixteen

Exercise 3 page 22

- 1 the twelfth of December / December the twelfth
- 2 the first of August / August the first
- 3 the tenth of March / March the tenth
- 4 the twenty-third of October / October the twenty-third
- 5 two thousand and one
- 6 twenty fifteen / two thousand and fifteen
- 7 nineteen ninety-five
- 8 twenty twenty / two thousand and twenty

Exercise 4 1.13 page 22

2 350 3 4,999 4 122 5 10,617 6 725 7 1,047 8 501

Transcript

- 1 one thousand three hundred and forty-five
- 2 three hundred and fifty
- 3 four thousand nine hundred and ninety-nine
- 4 a hundred and twenty-two
- 5 ten thousand six hundred and seventeen
- 6 seven hundred and twenty-five
- 7 one thousand and forty-seven
- 8 five hundred and one

Exercise 5 1.14 page 22

1 11.07.2002 2 8.45 3 22.12 4 1,350 5 7.30 6 18.05

Transcript

- 1 My date of birth is 11 July 2002.
- 2 School starts at quarter to nine.
- 3 This term ends on 22 December.
- 4 There are 1,350 students in my school.
- 5 I usually have breakfast at half past seven.
- 6 My mum's birthday is on 18 May.

Exercise 6 1.15 page 22

1 F 2 T 3 T

Transcript

- Interviewer** This is Anna Willis. She's a student at the West London Free School. The school opened in 2011. How old are you, Anna?
- Student** I'm 14. I'm in Year 10.
- I Anna, this school has got a lot of rules. Do you enjoy it here?
- S Yes, I do. It's a great school. I like the rules! They help me to learn and study.
- I Tell me about your school day.
- S I wake up at six o'clock, and I have to arrive at school at twenty to nine.
- I You have to get up early! What time do you leave school?
- S At quarter to five. We work hard.
- I How many lessons do you have?
- S I have three lessons in the morning. Each lesson is 50 minutes long. Lunch is at five to one for an hour. Then we have three more lessons after lunch. After that, I do music or sport. Everybody has to learn a musical instrument in our school. And I'm in the hockey team. Then I go home – finally!
- I That's a long day.
- S Yes, I'm home at six o'clock. I always do homework for an hour. Then we have dinner. I go to bed at 9 p.m. I'm usually very tired!

Exercise 7 1.15 page 22

1 a 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 c 6 b

Transcript

See exercise 6.

2D Grammar**Adverbs of frequency; question words****Exercise 1** page 23

- 1 always 2 usually 3 often 4 sometimes 5 hardly ever 6 never

Exercise 2 page 23

1 School **always** starts at 8.30. 2 Matt **never** does the washing. 3 I'm **sometimes** tired in science lessons. 4 My parents **hardly ever** work on Sundays. 5 We are **often** thirsty after P.E. lessons. 6 You **usually** sit next to me.

Exercise 5 page 23

- 1 How do you get to school?
- 2 What do you want to do this evening?
- 3 How many brothers and sisters have you got?
- 4 When is your birthday?
- 5 Where do you live?
- 6 How often do you play computer games?
- 7 What time do you usually go to bed?
- 8 Whose skateboard is this?
- 9 Which do you prefer, cola or lemonade?
- 10 Why have you got a scarf, hat and gloves?
- 11 Who is your maths teacher?

Exercise 6 page 23

a 5 b 7 c 1 d 10 e 3 f 8 g 2 h 9 i 4 j 11 k 6

Exercise 7 page 23

- 1 What time do you usually get up? (students' own answers)
- 2 How do you get home from school? (students' own answers)
- 3 What do you usually have for lunch? (students' own answers)
- 4 Who do you usually see at weekends? (students' own answers)
- 5 What do you usually do on Friday evening? (students' own answers)

2E Word Skills**Prepositions of time****Exercise 1** page 24

- 1 in 2 at 3 in 4 on 5 in 6 at 7 on 8 on
9 in 10 at

Exercise 2 page 24

1 at 2 On 3 in 4 At 5 On 6 in 7 on

Exercise 3 page 24

after ... we start lessons at ten, after breakfast.
before I usually do it before dinner.
during During the break Mum lets me play computer games!
from ... to I have lessons from Monday to Thursday.
until Mum lets me sleep until nine ...

Exercise 4 page 24

- 1 from, to 2 After 3 until 4 before 5 during

Exercise 5 page 24

- 1 I don't go to school **on** Sunday.
- 2 I like to play football **at** the weekend.

- 3 Do you give people presents **on** New Year's Day?
 4 I do my homework **in** the evening.
 5 The supermarket is open **until** six o'clock.
 6 I often go to the beach **in** the summer.

2F Reading

Small schools

Exercise 1 page 25

- 1 small 2 large 3 wide 4 narrow 5 wet 6 dry
 7 dangerous 8 safe

Exercise 2 page 25

They don't have many students.

Exercise 3 page 25

- A 2 B 1 C 3 D 1 E 2 F 3 G 1

2G Speaking

Giving advice

Exercise 1 page 26

- 1 shouldn't sit 2 should go 3 should wear
 4 shouldn't answer 5 shouldn't swim 6 should go

Exercise 2 page 26

- 2 We should go to the park.
 3 You should go home now.
 4 I should finish my homework.
 5 You shouldn't skateboard in the road.
 6 We shouldn't listen to music.

Exercise 3 page 26

- 1 something 2 course 3 problem 4 see 5 do
 6 tell 7 that 8 right

Exercise 4 1.16 page 26

- 1 angry, brother, parents 2 worried, show, words
 3 sad, team, teacher

Transcript

- 1 **Boy** Hi! How are you?
Girl Not great.
B Oh, dear.
G Can I ask your advice about something?
B Yes, of course. What is it?
G Well, I'm really angry with my brother. He never helps with the housework at home.
B Oh, dear!
G So I have to do more housework.
B That's not fair.
G So what should I do? When I talk to him, he just laughs.
B You should talk to your parents.
G Really?
B Yes. Tell them how you feel.
G You're right. Thanks.
2 **Girl** Hi! How are you?
Boy I'm OK. But I'm worried about the school show.
G Oh, dear. Why?
B Because I don't know my words! And the show is next week!
G You should learn them!
B I can't learn them. My memory isn't very good.
G I know. You should practise your words with me.
B What do you mean?

G You should say your words to me. And I can do all the other parts.

B Yes, that's a good idea. Thanks very much!

G No problem. Let's start today, after school!

3 **Boy** Hello! Are you OK?

Girl Not really.

B What's the problem?

G I'm not in the school volleyball team this year.

B Oh, no!

G I'm really sad about it. I'm usually the captain!

B So why aren't you in the team?

G I don't know. Perhaps the new sports teacher doesn't like me.

B I think you should talk to her.

G Really? Are you sure?

B Yes. Perhaps it's a mistake.

G Yes, that's possible. Hey, thanks.

2H Writing

An announcement

Exercise 1 page 27

- 1 concert 2 musical 3 play 4 school camp
 5 school club 6 school trip 7 sports day

Exercise 2 page 27

- 1 Are 2 want 3 is 4 meet 5 play 6 practise
 7 Come 8 Phone 9 like 10 Are 11 come
 12 meet 13 learn 14 play 15 wait 16 visit
 Students should circle: Come (7 and 11), Phone (8), wait (15), visit (16)

Exercise 3 page 27

- Badminton Club** 1 Thursday, 4 p.m., 3 in the school gym, 5 play for fun, 6 play matches, 7 practise skills, 11 contact Laura
Computer Club 2 Monday, from 3.30, 4 in the computer lab, 8 do programming, 9 learn to use software, 10 play games online, 12 visit the website

Exercise 4 page 27

- 1 Don't forget to tell your friends! 2 Call this number or visit our website! 3 Make new friends! 4 Play football and get fit! 5 Don't miss it!

Review Unit 2

Exercise 1 page 28

- 1 wake 2 get 3 have 4 arrive 5 leave 6 go

Exercise 2 page 28

- 1 Monday 2 Tuesday 3 Wednesday 4 Thursday
 5 Friday 6 Saturday 7 Sunday

Exercise 3 page 28

- 1 Maths 2 Economics 3 History 4 Geography
 5 Biology

Exercise 4 page 28

- 1 is a small country 2 New Orleans is dangerous 3 is very narrow 4 is usually wet

Exercise 5 page 28

- 1 bridge 2 River 3 mountain 4 valley 5 jungle 6 boat

Exercise 6 page 28
1 c 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 a 6 b

Exercise 7 page 28
1 C 2 F 3 E 4 A 5 B 6 D

Exercise 8 page 29
1 do you have to do 2 don't have to clean 3 have to set 4 does your brother have to do 5 has to load 6 doesn't have to unload

Exercise 9 page 29
1 My parents hardly ever go to the cinema.
2 I sometimes play tennis.
3 We never watch TV in English.
4 Jo always wears jeans.
5 They often have pasta for lunch.
6 Mike usually gets up early.

Exercise 10 page 29
1 When 2 How 3 What 4 Where 5 Who 6 Which

Exercise 11 page 29
1 What 2 should 3 don't 4 speak/talk 5 in
6 at 7 who

Unit 3 Style

3A Vocabulary

Clothes

Exercise 1 page 30
trousers, boots, skirt, jacket, leggings, trainers, scarf, tracksuit, jumper, jeans, socks, sweatshirt, cardigan, shorts, pyjamas

Exercise 2 page 30
(Possible answers)
1 dress, skirt, leggings 2 trainers, tracksuit, shorts
3 scarf, boots, coat 4 cap, T-shirt, shorts

Exercise 3 page 30
1 F 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 T

Exercise 4 1.17 page 30
1 C 2 A 3 F 4 E 5 B 6 D

Transcript

1 **Ava** Ava has got a jacket. She's got a skirt and boots.
2 **Ethan** Ethan has got a T-shirt and shorts. He's got trainers too.
3 **Zoe** Zoe has got a jumper and black trousers.
4 **Logan** Logan has got a scarf. He's got a sweatshirt and jeans.
5 **Mia** Mia has got a dress and a cardigan.
6 **Lucas** Lucas has got a cap and a tracksuit.

Exercise 5 1.17 page 30
2 Ethan has got socks. 3 Zoe has got boots. 4 Logan has got trainers. 5 Mia has got shoes. 6 Lucas has got trainers.

Transcript

See exercise 4.

Exercise 6 page 30
He has got a jumper, jeans and shoes. He's got a jacket. She's got a T-shirt, jeans and boots. She's got a scarf.

3B Grammar

Present continuous

Exercise 1 page 31
2 My brothers are watching TV.
3 Our rabbit is eating its food.
4 The sun is shining.
5 Maria is wearing a coat.
6 You're playing the guitar very well.
7 My best friend is sitting next to me.
8 Our bus is leaving soon.

Exercise 2 page 31
2 My brothers aren't watching TV.
3 Our rabbit isn't eating its food.
4 The sun isn't shining.
5 Maria isn't wearing a coat.
6 You aren't playing the guitar very well.
7 My best friend isn't sitting next to me.
8 Our bus isn't leaving soon.

Exercise 3 page 31
1 Is it raining outside? Yes, it is./No, it isn't. 2 Is the sun shining? Yes, it is./No, it isn't. 3 Are your friends sitting near you? Yes, they are./No, they aren't. 4 Are you wearing jeans? Yes, I am./No, I'm not. 5 Are you listening to music at the moment? Yes, I am./No, I'm not. 6 Are you eating anything at the moment? Yes, I am./No, I'm not.

Exercise 4 page 31
2 The woman with glasses is watching TV.
3 The boy with the cap isn't playing. He's eating.
4 The girl with long hair is sitting on her bag.
5 The man with glasses is waiting at the café.
6 The woman in a dress isn't walking past the café. She's running.

Exercise 5 page 31
1 Are you enjoying 2 'm getting 3 's doing 4 's working 5 isn't helping 6 is calling 7 are you planning

3C Listening

Catwalk fashion

Exercise 1 page 32
1 baggy 2 casual 3 dark 4 light 5 long 6 long-sleeved 7 patterned 8 plain 9 short 10 short-sleeved 11 smart 12 tight

Exercise 2 page 32
1 father 2 parent 3 lesson 4 address
5 tattoo 6 moustache 7 basketball 8 teenager
9 grandfather 10 eraser 11 apartment 12 together
13 introduce 14 afternoon 15 lemonade

Exercise 3 1.18 page 32
2 S 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 D 9 D

Transcript

1 leggings guitar
2 repeat complete
3 remember together

- 4 brother moustache
- 5 exercise already
- 6 parent borrow
- 7 kangaroo referee
- 8 afternoon evening
- 9 unload trainers

Exercise 4 page 32

- 1 computing
- 2 musician
- 3 beginning
- 4 answer
- 5 complete
- 6 along

Exercise 5 1.19 page 32

- 1 b
- 2 a
- 3 b
- 4 c
- 5 c

Transcript

Millie Hey, Tanya, where are you? We're all here at the party. We're waiting for you!

Tanya I'm still at home!

M It's seven twenty-five. Why are you so late?

T Because I can't decide what outfit to wear! I'm sitting in my bedroom and all my clothes are on the floor, on the bed, everywhere. But I've got nothing to wear!

M Tanya, don't be silly. You've got lots of nice clothes. Come on, hurry up.

T What kind of party is it? What's everybody wearing? What are you wearing?

M Well, I'm wearing a new dress. It's short and blue, but it isn't smart. I'm wearing my brown boots with it.

T Well, that sounds nice. Are people wearing casual or smart clothes?

M Well, it's a mixture. Anna and Denise are wearing jeans with black tops and smart shoes. Jake is wearing a white shirt with his black jacket. They look fantastic together – except he's wearing purple shorts! You know the crazy clothes he wears.

T I do.

M Greg is wearing a sweatshirt – the same as he wears every day. Oh, and Amy's wearing a patterned pink and green dress. She thinks it's attractive, but it's horrible. So, stop worrying. It doesn't matter what you wear. Just get dressed and come to Lucy's house now! You've got fifteen minutes. I want to dance!

T OK, OK. Look, help me. You know my clothes. Just tell me what to choose.

M Right. Wear your blue jeans and trainers ...

T I always wear jeans and trainers. I can't wear them again!

M OK, wear a black skirt, boots and your silver top.

T Thanks! Wonderful idea!

M OK. Just hurry up!

Exercise 6 page 32

- 1 2
- 2 1
- 3 2
- 4 2
- 5 2
- 6 2
- 7 1
- 8 2
- 9 1
- 10 2
- 11 1
- 12 3

Exercise 7 page 32

- 1 It's seven **twenty-five**.
- 2 **Because** I can't decide what **outfit** to wear!
- 3 They look **fantastic together**.
- 4 She thinks it's **attractive**, but it's **horrible**.
- 5 I **always** wear jeans and **trainers**. I can't wear them **again**!
- 6 Thanks! **Wonderful idea!**

3D Grammar

Contrast: present simple and present continuous

Exercise 1 page 33

- 1 present simple
- 2 present continuous
- 3 present continuous
- 4 present simple
- 5 present simple

Exercise 2 page 33

- a 3
- b 2
- c 1
- d 5
- e 5
- f 4
- g 1
- h 2

Exercise 3 page 33

- 1 are you doing
- 2 'm sitting
- 3 'm drinking
- 4 makes
- 5 often come
- 6 'm waiting
- 7 don't understand
- 8 need
- 9 is coming

Exercise 4 page 33

- 1 Tom often **wears** trainers to school, but today he's **wearing** shoes.
- 2 **We're watching** a DVD at the moment, but we **watch** TV most evenings.
- 3 I usually **have** a sandwich for lunch, but today I'm **having** some soup.
- 4 My mum **works** in an office in Manchester, but this month she's **working** in Glasgow.
- 5 It hardly ever **snows** here, but it **is snowing** at the moment.
- 6 Jason and Tilly **are tidying** their bedrooms right now, but they usually **tidy** them at the weekend.

Exercise 5 page 33

- 1 do, prefer
- 2 's having
- 3 don't like
- 4 don't know
- 5 is singing
- 6 is, laughing, 's watching

Exercise 6 page 33

- 1 Do you want an ice cream?
- 2 Right now I'm doing my homework.
- 4 Josh and Sam hate maths.
- 6 I sometimes play the guitar in my bedroom.
- 7 It sometimes rains a lot in Scotland.

3E Word Skills

Adjectives: opposites

Exercise 1 page 34

- 1 good
- 2 awful
- 3 different
- 4 difficult
- 5 expensive
- 6 true
- 7 fantastic
- 8 low
- 9 new
- 10 wrong
- 11 safe
- 12 large

Exercise 2 page 34

- 1 safe
- 2 expensive
- 3 high
- 4 right
- 5 different
- 6 difficult
- 7 true

Exercise 3 page 34

- 1 friendly
- 2 kind
- 3 happy
- 4 tidy
- 5 usual
- 6 necessary
- 7 comfortable

Negative prefix: un-

Exercise 4 page 34

- 1 uncomfortable
- 2 untidy
- 3 unusual
- 4 unhappy
- 5 unfriendly

Exercise 5 page 34

(Possible answers)

- a cheap, expensive, comfortable
- b great, dangerous, large
- c easy, difficult, awful
- d good, fantastic, terrible
- e friendly, kind, happy

Exercise 6 page 34

- 1 asleep
- 2 early
- 3 ugly
- 4 thin
- 5 far
- 6 hard

3F Reading

Teenage pressures

Exercise 1 page 35

- 2 real 3 female 4 male 5 natural 6 artificial
7 special 8 ordinary

Exercise 2 page 35

Grace

Exercise 3 page 35

- 1 d 2 b 3 f 4 a

3G Speaking

Making arrangements

Exercise 1 page 36

- 1 Do you fancy going bowling on Saturday?
2 what about Sunday?
3 Shall I come to your house and pick you up on the way?
4 What time?
5 How about 2.30?

Exercise 2 page 36

- 1 cards 2 computer games 3 football 4 ice skating
5 swimming 6 a café 7 the beach 8 a walk
9 dinner 10 friends

Exercise 3 page 36

Do you fancy/How about + -ing
Shall we/Why don't we/Let's + infinitive without to

Exercise 4 page 36

Agreeing: 1 Cool. 2 Great idea. 3 That sounds fun.

4 Yes, I'd love to.

Declining: 1 I'm afraid I can't 2 No, thanks. 3 Sorry, but I'm busy.

Exercise 5 1.20 page 36

- 1 he doesn't like ice skating 2 Saturday morning
3 the cinema 4 after the film

Transcript

Lottie Hi, Sam.

Sam Hi, Lottie.

L Fred and I are going ice skating on Friday evening. Do you want to come too?

S No, thanks. I don't really enjoy ice skating.

L Well, what are you doing on Saturday evening? Shall we go out then?

S I'm afraid I can't. We've got relatives staying. But I'm free on Saturday morning. The new Bradley Cooper film is out. Do you fancy going to the cinema?

L Yes, I'd love to.

S OK, let's meet at the cinema at 10.30.

L Cool.

S And we can have lunch in a café after.

L That sounds fun.

S OK. See you on Saturday.

L See you.

Exercise 6 1.20 page 36

Agreeing Cool. That sounds fun. Yes, I'd love to.

Declining I'm afraid I can't No, thanks.

Transcript

See exercise 5.

Exercise 7 page 36

The present continuous

3H Writing

An email

Exercise 1 page 37

- 1 to 2 for 3 from 4 wishes 5 things 6 of 7 to
8 soon

Exercise 2 page 37

1 How are things? / Thanks for your email.

2 That's all from me.

3 Best wishes / Give my love to your parents. / Say 'Hi' to your sister. / Lots of love

Exercise 3 page 37

but, or, so

Exercise 4 page 37

- 1 and / so 2 but 3 because 4 and 5 or 6 and

Exercise 5 page 37

- 1 say what you are doing now
2 suggest an activity to do together
3 talk about a future arrangement

Review Unit 3

Exercise 1 page 38

- 1 scarf 2 skirt 3 dress 4 shorts 5 socks 6 tie

Exercise 2 page 38

- 1 smart 2 long 3 tight 4 short-sleeved 5 dark
6 plain

Exercise 3 page 38

- 1 male 2 fake 3 a special 4 natural

Exercise 4 page 38

- 1 unkind 2 unhappy 3 unnecessary 4 unfriendly
5 untidy 6 unusual

Exercise 5 page 38

- 1 fancy 2 afraid 3 love 4 Shall 5 idea 6 Let's
7 busy 8 How 9 sounds 10 Cool

Exercise 6 page 38

- 1 old 2 wrong 3 difficult 4 different 5 safe
6 false 7 bad 8 low 9 awful

Exercise 7 page 39

- 1 are you doing 2 'm studying 3 Is your sister
listening 4 isn't listening 5 's playing 6 aren't talking
7 're watching 8 'm not learning

Exercise 8 page 39

- 1 'm making 2 don't like 3 goes 4 's buying 5 isn't
wearing 6 doesn't want 7 aren't going out 8 work

Exercise 9 page 39

- 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 a 7 b 8 b

Exam Skills Trainer 2

Exercise 1 page 40

A you, your B them C them D you E They F you
G you H your, they

Exercise 2 page 40

1 C 2 G 3 A 4 F 5 H 6 B 7 D

Exercise 3 page 40

3

Exercise 4 1.21 page 40

1 D 2 B 3 C 4 A

1 Now, I have a number of announcements today. The first is about your uniforms. I know we usually say you have to wear your long-sleeved shirts until 1st May, but this year it's getting hot already. So, from Monday – that's this Monday, 15 April – you can wear your short-sleeved shirts to school. I'm sure you'll be more comfortable with those. Moving on ...

2 Sean Mum, have you seen my jumper?

Mum Which jumper's that, Sean?

S My school jumper. I can't find it anywhere!

M Well, is it in your bedroom?

S No, I've looked there.

M How about on the chair in the bathroom?

S No! It isn't there, either!

M What about your bag? Is it in your schoolbag?

S I'll have a look. Yes, great! Thanks a lot, Mum. See you later.

M Bye, then. Have a good day at school.

3 Karl Rita, what do you think about school uniforms? Do you think they're necessary?

Rita Um, yes I do, Karl. The idea is that all the students are the same with a uniform. I think that's a good thing. Karl Hmm, I'm not so sure. The students in my class really don't like it. They want to choose their own clothes. I kind of understand them, really.

4 With only two weeks of the summer holidays left, it's time to think about going back to school. And you probably need a new uniform! Where better to buy it than at Uniforms 4U. We've got a special offer of two-for-the-price-of-one on all our skirts and trousers. So come and get your uniform at Uniforms 4U – you won't regret it!

Exercise 5 page 40

1 are 2 isn't 3 does 4 aren't 5 don't

Exercise 6 page 41

1 isn't 2 in 3 to 4 aren't 5 is 6 can 7 have
8 do 9 difficult / expensive 10 doesn't

Exercise 7 page 41

1 B 2 E 3 D 4 A 5 C

Exercise 9 page 41

1 Hi / Hello 2 I hope you're well. 3 That's all from me.
4 Call me next week. 5 That's all for now. / That's all
from me. 6 Ask your parents.

Unit 4 Food

4A Vocabulary

Are you hungry?

Exercise 1 page 42

1 bread 2 apples 3 pasta 4 cheese 5 cucumber
6 sausages 7 tomatoes 8 lettuce 9 pineapple
10 onions 11 carrots 12 melon

Exercise 2 page 42

1 beef 2 lamb 3 mushrooms 4 rice 5 sandwiches
6 crisps 7 strawberries 8 olives 9 chicken
10 lemons 11 peppers 12 prawns

Exercise 3 1.22 page 42

1 B 2 (does not match any of the lists) 3 A 4 C

Transcript

1 Jack and Mary

Jack Come on, hurry up. We need to buy some lunch quickly.

Mary I know, I know. Where are the snacks?

J Over here, come on. So, here are the sandwiches.

M OK. Two sandwiches. And some crisps?

J Yes, great. Ooh ... and olives.

M I don't like olives.

J Well I do. You can choose something different.

M Strawberries! They look really nice.

J OK! Let's go!

2 Leo and Darcy

Leo What do we need? What's for dinner?

Darcy We need fish. It's over here.

L What else? Potatoes?

D Yes, potatoes. And we need a vegetable.

L Potatoes are a vegetable!

D A green vegetable!

L OK. Peas?

D Fine. Get some peas. Oh, and we need cheese too.

L Cheese? With fish?

D No. The cheese is for your sandwiches tomorrow.

3 Arthur and Megan

Megan What are you planning for dinner?

Arthur Curry, I think. I need lamb – and beef.

M Lamb and beef?

A For two different dishes, yes.

M Is that all?

A No, I need mushrooms too.

M OK. They're over there, with the vegetables.

A And rice.

M OK, let's get the rice first. Then the mushrooms.

4 Finley and Amber

Amber What do we need for the barbecue?

Finley We need chicken. It's here, look.

A And what about some other meat?

F This beef looks nice.

A OK. We have to get some peppers too, one of each colour.

F And we have to buy prawns. I love prawns on a barbecue!

A Me too.

F We need lemons, of course. You can't have prawns without lemons.

A OK, where are the lemons?

F The fruit is over there, by the door. Come on!

Exercise 4 1.22 page 42

fish, potatoes, peas, cheese

Transcript

See exercise 3.

Exercise 5 1.23 page 42

2

Transcript

Waiter Can I help you?

Guest Oh, hello. Can I order some breakfast, please?

W Of course. What can I get for you?

G Some cereal, please. With milk.

W Certainly. Anything else?

G Yes. Can I have some toast?

W Toast. Yes. With butter and jam?

G Yes, please.

W Any eggs?

G Eggs? No, thank you. Just cereal and toast.

W And would you like some tea or some coffee?

G No, thanks. Just orange juice.

4B Grammar

there is / there are; some and any

Exercise 1 page 43

1 There are (Students' own answers)

2 There's (Students' own answers)

3 There's (Students' own answers)

4 There are (Students' own answers)

5 There are (Students' own answers)

6 There's (Students' own answers)

Exercise 2 page 43

1 any 2 any 3 some 4 some 5 any 6 any

7 some 8 any

Exercise 3 page 43

2 I don't want any prawns on my pizza.

3 I'm not eating any melon with my breakfast.

4 There isn't a pineapple on the table.

5 There aren't any tomatoes in the shopping bag.

6 I don't want an egg for breakfast.

7 I haven't got any apples.

8 There aren't any sandwiches for your friends.

Exercise 4 page 43

2 Are there any sandwiches? Yes, there are.

3 Are there any mushrooms? No, there aren't.

4 Is there a chicken? No, there isn't.

5 Is there a pineapple? Yes, there is.

6 Are there any prawns? Yes, there are.

Exercise 5 page 43

2 Is there a bin in the room? Yes, there is./No, there isn't.

3 Is there a whiteboard? Yes, there is./No, there isn't.

4 Are there any shelves on the walls? Yes, there are./No, there aren't.

5 Is there a table for the teacher? Yes, there is./No, there isn't.

6 Are there any cupboards? Yes, there are./No, there aren't.

7 Is there a computer? Yes, there is./No, there isn't.

4C Listening

Eating in the wild!

Exercise 1 page 44

1 b 2 a 3 b

Exercise 2 1.24 page 44

1 Steve, bathroom 2 Where, milk 3 When's, birthday

4 Give, sandwich 5 Go, bed 6 Kate, ride, bike

Transcript

1 Steve is in the bathroom.

2 Where is the milk?

3 When's your birthday?

4 Give me a sandwich.

5 Go to bed!

6 Kate can ride a bike.

Exercise 3 1.25 page 44

1 can 2 them 3 the 4 an 5 from 6 some

The words are **unstressed**.

Transcript

1 Liam can swim.

2 Put them on the table.

3 Where's the salt?

4 That's an apple.

5 Juan's from Spain.

6 Here's some water.

Exercise 4 1.26 page 44

1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 F

Transcript

Interviewer Stacey, you are a wild forager. What exactly do you do?

Stacey I go with my friends and we look for food in the forest.

I Why do you do that?

S Well, we believe that we can eat what is already there. We grow too much food and it isn't good for the environment. We study plants and find food that is good to eat in the wild.

I Is that a safe thing to do?

S Yes, it is, if you are careful. You can't eat it if you don't know what it is. We study all of the plants very carefully first. Then we taste them. And we learn how to cook them too. It's easy, and it's fun!

I And how often do you collect this kind of food?

S We go to the countryside most weekends in spring, summer and autumn.

I And what kind of food do you like?

S Lots of things ... I love mushrooms. There are so many different kinds of mushrooms and they are delicious! I also love the different leaves and fruit of some plants. They are very healthy. And you can't buy any of them in the supermarket!

I Do you do any shopping for food?

S Yes, of course. All the time. You can't find everything in the countryside. But we eat lots of wild salads in the summer!

I Can you go anywhere to collect food?

S No, you can't go to nature reserves and you can't collect special plants. And we never collect too many plants. That's bad for the environment.

I Do your friends and family like your wild food?

S Of course they do – it's tasty, it's good for you and it's free!

Exercise 5 page 44

1 go, friends, look, food 2 good, environment 3 often, collect, kind, food 4 tasty, good, you, free

4D Grammar

how much / how many, much / many / a lot of, a few / a little

Exercise 1 page 45

1 many 2 much 3 many 4 much 5 much 6 many

Exercise 2 page 45

1 how much 2 How much 3 How many 4 How many

Exercise 3 page 45

- 2 How much cheese is there?
- 3 How many grapes are there?
- 4 How many sandwiches are there?
- 5 How much lettuce is there?
- 6 How many olives are there?
- 7 How much chicken is there?
- 8 How many strawberries are there?

Exercise 4 page 45

2 There isn't much. 3 There aren't many. 4 There aren't many. 5 There isn't much. 6 There are a lot. 7 There isn't much. 8 There aren't many.

Exercise 5 page 45

1 a few 2 a little 3 a little 4 a few 5 a little 6 a few 7 a little 8 a few 9 a little 10 a few, a little

4E Work Skills

Adjective + preposition

Exercise 1 page 46

1 with 2 for 3 for 4 on 5 to 6 about

Exercise 2 page 46

1 worried about 2 keen on 3 popular with 4 bad for 5 responsible for 6 used to

Exercise 3 page 46

1 good 2 bad 3 full 4 kind 5 disappointed

Exercise 4 page 46

1 in 2 of 3 for 4 of 5 at

Exercise 5 page 46

1 of 2 for 3 to 4 about 5 with

4F Reading

Online dining

Exercise 1 page 47

1 chef 2 menu 3 waiters 4 customers 5 knife
6 fork 7 tray 8 service

Exercise 2 page 47

c

Exercise 3 page 47

1 computer 2 viewers 3 take part 4 a month 5 fat 6 alone 7 friends / others

4G Speaking

In a restaurant

Exercise 1 page 48

1 pepper 2 beef 3 pie 4 rice 5 cheesecake
6 chocolate

Exercise 2 page 48

- 1 Are you ready to order?
- 2 And for your main course?
- 3 And what would you like, madam?
- 4 Would you like anything to drink?
- 5 The same for me.

Exercise 3 page 48

- 1 Would you like some rice?
- 2 What would you like for dinner?
- 3 I would like a cup of coffee, please.
- 4 Where would you like to sit?
- 5 We would like the bill, please.

Exercise 4 1.27 page 48

Dialogue 1 takes place **during** a meal.

Dialogue 2 takes place **before** a meal.

Dialogue 3 takes place **after** a meal.

Transcript

- 1 **Waiter** Is everything OK for you?
Man Yes, it's fine, thanks. This chicken curry is delicious!
Wa Good. Can I get you anything else?
M No, I'm fine, thanks. Oh, there is one thing ...
Wa Sir?
M Can I have some water, please?
Wa Yes, of course, sir. One moment.
M Thank you!
Wa No problem.
2 **Waiter** Good evening.
Man Can we have a table for two, please?
Wa Certainly, sir. Follow me.
M Thank you.
Wa This is your table.
Woman Thanks. It's perfect!
Wa Would you like to order some drinks?
M Yes, please.
Wa What would you like? Or would you like to see the drinks menu?
Wo I'd like to see the menu, please.
Wa Certainly. One moment.
3 **Woman** Excuse me?
Waiter Yes, madam. How can I help you?
Wo Can we have the bill, please?
Wa Certainly. One moment.
M What a nice restaurant.
Wo Yes, I want to come here again. Ah, here's the bill.
M £89. That isn't too bad.
Wo Excuse me. Does it include service?
Wa No, it doesn't.
M We have to leave a tip. The waiters are very friendly here!
Wo I agree. Let's pay a hundred.
M OK.

Exercise 5 page 48

- 1 **Waiter:** Is everything OK for you? **Customer:** Yes, it's fine, thanks.
- 2 **Customer:** Can I have **some** water, please? **Waiter:** Yes, of course, sir.

- 3 **Customer:** Can we have a table **for** two, please?
Waiter: Certainly, sir. Follow **me**.
4 **Waiter:** Would you **like** to order some drinks?
Customer: Yes, please.
5 **Customer:** Can we **have** the bill, please? **Waiter:** Certainly. **One** moment.
6 **Customer:** Does it include service? **Waiter:** No, it **doesn't**.

Exercise 6 1.27 page 48

See exercise 5.

4H Writing

An invitation

Exercise 1 page 49

1 e 2 c 3 f 4 g 5 a 6 b 7 d

Exercise 2 page 49

1 I'm having a party / I'm planning a party to celebrate my birthday. 2 Would you like to join us? 3 Can you please bring some CDs? 4 Hope you can make it. / Put it in your diary! 5 I'm having a party / I'm planning a party 6 I hope you can come. Let me know!

Exercise 3 page 49

2 The party should be funny! V
3 Can you please bring some food? S
4 Inviting all my friends. G
5 I'm having a birthday party. S
6 Don't remember to let me know if you can come. V

Exercise 4 page 49

2 The party should be fun!
3 Can you please bring some food?
4 I'm inviting all my friends.
5 I'm having a birthday party.
6 Don't forget to let me know if you can come.

Review Unit 4

Exercise 1 page 50

1 onion 2 prawns 3 eggs 4 milk 5 crisps 6 fish

Exercise 2 page 50

1 service 2 knife 3 fork 4 waiter 5 customers
6 menu 7 chef 8 tray

Exercise 3 page 50

1 e 2 h 3 d 4 g 5 a 6 c 7 f 8 b

Exercise 4 page 50

1 I'm planning 2 Would you like 3 can make it
4 celebrate my birthday 5 Can you bring 6 Put it

Exercise 5 page 50

1 with 2 of 3 to 4 for 5 of 6 for

Exercise 6 page 51

1 There is 2 There aren't 3 Is there 4 There isn't
5 Are there 6 There isn't 7 Is there

Exercise 7 page 51

1 any 2 a 3 any 4 any 5 an 6 some 7 any

Exercise 8 page 51

1 many 2 How much 3 a few 4 a lot of 5 a little
6 How many 7 much

Exercise 9 page 51

1 on 2 many 3 There 4 for 5 with 6 a 7 are
8 some 9 much 10 of

Unit 5 In the city

5A Vocabulary

Places

Exercise 1 page 52

2 car park d 3 airport a 4 fire station g 5 gym c
6 square b 7 swimming pool f 8 bus station h

Exercise 2 page 52

1 hospital 2 library 3 train station 4 police station
5 hotel 6 post office 7 zoo 8 museum 9 bank
10 cinema 11 park 12 shopping centre

Exercise 3 1.28 page 52

1 a F b T c T 2 a T b T c F 3 a T b T c F

Transcript

- 1 a The hospital is between the car park and the cinema.
True or false?
b The park is behind the hospital. True or false?
c The car park is next to the cinema. True or false?
2 a The man with the hat is in front of the hotel. True or false?
b The hotel is opposite the train station. True or false?
c The bank is next to the train station. True or false?
3 a The swimming pool is in the park. True or false?
b The town hall is behind the park. True or false?
c The bus station is behind the town hall. True or false?

5B Grammar

Comparatives

Exercise 1 page 53

1 quieter 2 smaller 3 friendlier 4 more polite
5 more interesting 6 more exciting 7 better 8 easier

Exercise 2 page 53

2 Crocodiles are more dangerous than sharks.
3 Chinese is more difficult than English.
4 Friends are more important than money.
5 Twitter is newer than Facebook.
6 Brown rice is more natural than white rice.
7 6 out of 10 is worse than 14 out of 20.

Exercise 3 page 53

1 Antarctica is bigger than Australia.
2 Mars is further from the sun than Earth.
3 Tigers are larger than cheetahs.
4 Mount Fuji isn't higher than Mount Kilimanjaro.
5 The North Pole isn't colder than the South Pole.
6 London is rainier than Rome.
7 Beijing is more polluted than Tokyo.
8 Gold is more expensive than silver.

Exercise 5  page 53

- 2 Who is funnier, Ben Stiller or Jim Carrey? (Students' own answers)
- 3 Which is more casual, a T-shirt or a shirt? (Students' own answers)
- 4 Which is worse, a broken leg or a broken arm? (Students' own answers)
- 5 Who is more famous, Lionel Messi or Taylor Swift? (Students' own answers)
- 6 Which is nicer, chocolate or cheese? (Students' own answers)
- 7 Which is more attractive, a flower or a butterfly? (Students' own answers)
- 8 Which is better, a good exam result or a nice present? (Students' own answers)

5C Listening**Town or country?****Exercise 1**  page 54

- 1 village
- 2 valley
- 3 hill
- 4 wood
- 5 field
- 6 farm
- 7 lake
- 8 traffic
- 9 office block
- 10 shopping centre
- 11 crowd
- 12 street

Exercise 2  1.29  page 54

- 1 b
- 2 c
- 3 c

Transcript

1 Jonnie The noise starts at 7.30 outside my window. I can see everyone going to work in the centre of town. It's very busy for two hours, then it gets quieter. At five o'clock the noise gets louder again with all the cars and buses with people going home.

2 Ian We go there every weekend, and we usually go in a big group. We like to watch action films or comedies. We sometimes buy sweets and fizzy drinks to eat and drink during the film.

3 Milla It's always busy, especially at the weekends. I like it like that. There's always something to see or do. My friends and I go there by bus as often as possible in our free time. But it's easy to spend too much money on shopping and pizza!

Exercise 3  1.30  page 54

- A 3
- B -
- C 2
- D 4
- E 1

Transcript

Speaker 1 I love museums and art galleries. I like history and beautiful buildings. I've got a few days off work, and my plan is to go to Barcelona with a friend. I can also speak the language and I especially love the food, so I can't wait!

Speaker 2 Look out of the window on your right and you can see a large lake between the trees and flowers of our beautiful park. In a moment on your left you can see the main street with the town hall at the end. Now, we're going to the centre where you can see the famous library. It's one of the oldest buildings here.

Speaker 3 Come in and through here into the garden. It's really pretty, don't you think? Now go through this door. Do you like it? It's smaller than my last home, but it's more comfortable and so much nicer. Look out of the window and you can see trees and fields. It's a wonderful view!

Speaker 4 I really don't like it here. It's busy, noisy and dirty. I'd prefer to live somewhere more beautiful and more peaceful. I'd like to see open spaces and green everywhere. I'd like to see hills, woods and fields. That's my ideal place to live.

Exercise 4  1.30  page 54

- 1 Spain
- 2 town hall, library
- 3 her new home
- 4 Because it's busy, noisy and dirty.

Transcript

See exercise 3.

5D Grammar**Superlatives****Exercise 1**  page 55

- 1 bus
- 2 car
- 3 coach
- 4 motorbike
- 5 plane
- 6 ship
- 7 taxi
- 8 train
- 9 tram
- 10 underground

Exercise 2  page 55

- 1 the warmest
- 2 the noisiest
- 3 the widest
- 4 the biggest
- 5 the most exciting
- 6 the worst
- 7 the most talented
- 8 the easiest

Exercise 3  page 55

- 1 the quickest
- 2 the healthiest
- 3 the most comfortable
- 4 the best
- 5 the hottest
- 6 the safest

Exercise 4  page 55

- 1 The Amazon is the longest river in the world.
- 2 Neptune is the furthest planet from the sun.
- 3 Who is the friendliest girl in the class?
- 4 Chimpanzees are the most intelligent animals in the world.
- 5 In my opinion, maths exams are the worst.

Exercise 5  page 55

- 1 Josh is the tallest boy in the class.
- 2 Zurich is the most expensive city in Europe.
- 3 The Pacific is the largest ocean in the world.
- 4 James's exam results are the best in the class.
- 5 The furthest I travelled last year was to New York.

Exercise 6  page 55

- 2 Mexico City is smaller than Tokyo, but New York is the smallest.
- 3 New York is wetter than Mexico City, but Tokyo is the wettest.
- 4 New York is drier than Tokyo, but Mexico City is the driest.
- 5 Tokyo is cheaper than New York, but Mexico City is the cheapest.
- 6 Tokyo is more expensive than Mexico City, but New York is the most expensive.
- 7 Mexico City is hotter than New York, but Tokyo is the hottest.
- 8 Tokyo is colder than Mexico City, but New York is the coldest.
- 9 New York is cleaner than Mexico City, but Tokyo is the cleanest.
- 10 New York is more polluted than Tokyo, but Mexico City is the most polluted.

5E Word Skills

Words that go together

Exercise 1 page 56

- 1 go by 2 travel to 3 get on 4 get out of 5 go up 6 buy 7 take 8 catch 9 miss / wait for 10 go 11 ride 12 lose 13 cross 14 drive 15 wait for / miss 16 give

Exercise 2 page 56

- 1 school 2 work 3 a lift 4 by bus 5 the bus 6 a tram 7 the road 8 for a tram 9 bicycle 10 a train 11 a ticket 12 the train 13 on foot

Exercise 4 page 56

- 1 What time do you **get** to London?
2 Taxis are expensive, but I always **take** a taxi to town.
3 I usually **arrive home** at 4.40 in the afternoon.
4 Take a map with you so you don't **lose** your way.
5 My mum arrives **at / gets** to work at nine o'clock.
6 Joe is waiting **for** the bus at the bus stop.
7 The plane arrives **in** Italy at ten o'clock.
8 Sally usually **goes** on foot to school.

Exercise 5 page 56

- 1 ferry, moped 2 flight attendant, ticket collector
3 coach station, taxi rank 4 depart, land 5 book a ticket, change trains

5F Reading

Unusual cities

Exercise 1 page 57

- Continents:** 1 North America 2 Europe 3 Asia 4 Africa
5 South America 6 Antarctica 7 Australia
Compass points: a north b east c south d west

Exercise 2 page 57

Punta Arenas and El Alto are in South America.

Exercise 3 page 57

- 1 C 2 A 3 B

Exercise 4 page 57

- 1 C 2 A 3 B 4 C 5 A 6 B 7 A

5G Speaking

Asking for and giving directions

Exercise 1 page 58

- 1 next to 2 between 3 opposite 4 corner 5 left

Exercise 2 1.31 page 58

- 2 bank 3 town hall 4 police station 5 library
6 swimming pool

Transcript

- 1 It's opposite the bank.
2 It's next to the gym.
3 It's on the corner opposite the café.
4 It's between the bus station and the swimming pool.
5 It's next to the hotel.
6 It's on the corner, opposite the car park.

Exercise 3 page 58

- 1 straight, g 2 along, e 3 first, c 4 end, a 5 past, b
6 at, f 7 under, d 8 over, h

Exercise 4 1.32 page 58

- 1 train station 2 town hall 3 swimming pool
4 post office

Transcript

- 1 **G** Excuse me. I'm new here. Where is the ... ?
M Go straight on and turn left at the roundabout. Go to the end of West Street and turn right. Go straight on, and it's at the end of the road. You can't miss it.
G Thank you.
M You're welcome.
2 **G** Excuse me. Can you direct me to the ... ?
M Yes, that's easy. It isn't far from here. Go straight on and take the first left. It's on your right.
G OK, thanks!
M Not at all.
3 **B** Excuse me. Can you direct me to the ... , please?
W Certainly. Go straight on, past the roundabout. Go to the end of William Street and turn right at the traffic lights. Then —
B Sorry, could you speak more slowly, please?
W Yes, sorry. Go straight on, along William Street. Go past the roundabout. At the end of William Street, turn right. Then turn left at the roundabout and go under the bridge. Take the first left and it's on your right, opposite the car park.
B Thanks very much.
W You're welcome.
4 **B** Excuse me. Can you tell me where the ... is, please?
W Yes, of course. Go straight on, along William Street. Take the first right and go to the end of the road. Turn left and go along South Street, past the bank on your left. It's on your right, on the corner, opposite the supermarket.
B Could you repeat that, please?
W Yes, go straight along William Street. Take the first right then turn left at the end of the road. Go along South Street. It's on your right, opposite the supermarket. It's on the corner.
B Great. Thanks very much.
W You're welcome.

Exercise 5 page 58

Could you speak more slowly, please?, Could you repeat that, please?

5H Writing

An article

Exercise 1 page 59

- 1 places of interest 2 getting around 3 places to stay

Exercise 2 page 59

Northwick Hall

Exercise 3 page 59

- 1 Paragraph 3 2 c

Exercise 4 page 59

- 1 eating out 2 shopping 3 entertainment

Exercise 5 page 59

Paragraph 1: great fish and chip shop – cheap!

Paragraph 2: small shops in town centre

Paragraph 3: cinema – cheaper tickets on Thursdays

Review Unit 5

Exercise 1 page 60

1 F 2 D 3 C 4 A 5 E 6 B

Exercise 2 page 60

1 opposite 2 between 3 near 4 inside 5 next to

Exercise 3 page 60

1 lake 2 hill 3 crowd 4 field 5 wood

Exercise 4 page 60

1 plane 2 motorbike 3 car 4 taxi 5 underground

Exercise 5 page 60

1 Europe 2 south 3 Africa 4 Asia 5 east

6 North America

Exercise 6 page 60

1 Go 2 Take 3 Go 4 Go 5 Turn 6 Go

Exercise 7 page 60

1 F 2 B 3 A 4 E 5 C 6 D

Exercise 8 page 61

1 worse than Fridays 2 easier than Chinese 3 wider than country roads 4 hotter than winter 5 more dangerous than cars 6 cheaper than Spain 7 shorter than the River Danube 8 faster than the bus

Exercise 9 page 61

1 the biggest 2 the highest 3 the longest 4 the furthest 5 the best 6 the easiest 7 the safest 8 the oldest

Exercise 10 page 61

1 a 2 b 3 b 4 c 5 c 6 b 7 a 8 a 9 c 10 c

Exam Skills Trainer 3

Exercise 1 page 62

ice skating, swimming

The correct answer is B. A and D are incorrect because the ice rink changes into a swimming pool in the summer.

Exercise 2 page 62

1 B 2 D 3 C

Exercise 3 page 62

5

Exercise 4 1.33 page 62

1 C 2 B 3 A 4 C 5 B

Transcript

Presenter Every year, *The Economist* magazine makes a list of the best cities in the world to live in. Gloria Cooke is with us today to tell us about the latest list. Gloria, what kind of cities are at the top?

Gloria Well, they're all cities that are more or less the same size: not very big, but not very small, either. Quite a lot of people live there, but they aren't very crowded. There are only two capital cities at the top, for example.

P Which ones?

G Vienna, capital of Austria, and the capital of Finland: Helsinki.

P Are there any other European cities in the top ten, Gloria?

G Yes, there's one more: Zurich in Switzerland. Zurich has the same number of points as Helsinki, so they're both tenth. That means we're talking about the top eleven cities here, not the top ten.

P Right. So, where are the other cities in the top eleven?

G We've got Auckland in New Zealand at number nine, and then the rest are either in Australia or Canada. Australia has four in the top eleven and Canada has three.

P How interesting! So, Gloria, the moment we've all been waiting for: which is the best city to live in?

G According to *The Economist*, it's Melbourne, Australia. The study says that Melbourne has fantastic schools and excellent medical care – the city got 100 out of 100 in these two categories.

P Melbourne! Nice! Gloria Cooke, thanks for joining us.

Exercise 5 page 63

a quantifier b article c time preposition
d question word e preposition in a collocation
f comparative or superlative

Exercise 6 page 63

1 b 2 e 3 e 4 d 5 f 6 a 7 e 8 a 9 c 10 a

Exercise 7 page 63

1 a 2 to 3 by 4 Why 5 most 6 lot 7 of 8 any
9 on 10 few

Exercise 8 page 63

1 Go 2 Turn 3 Cross 4 Go 5 Go 6 Take 7 Go
8 Go

Exercise 10 page 63

1 the restaurant serves 2 on the menu, there's 3 their uniforms are

Unit 6 Going wild

6A Vocabulary

Wild animals

Exercise 1 page 64

1 bear 2 dolphin 3 bee 4 spider 5 shark 6 whale
7 snake 8 tiger 9 monkey 10 giraffe 11 lion 12 frog
13 eagle 14 gorilla 15 crocodile 16 hippo
The hidden animals are: elephant, kangaroo

Exercise 2 page 64

ear 1 legs 7 paw 4 tail 8 eye 5 mouth 2 teeth 3
wing 6

Exercise 3 page 64

1 dolphins, sharks, whales, snakes 2 bees, eagles, birds
3 bees, spiders 4 bears, tigers, monkeys, giraffes, lions,
crocodiles, hippos, wolves, elephants, kangaroos

Exercise 4 2.02 page 64

1 a bear 2 an eagle 3 a gorilla 4 a bee

Transcript

1 I think this is a great photo of a xx. It's standing in a river and it's eating a salmon. It's holding the fish in its big paws. I imagine this is in the USA or Canada, maybe – that's where they live, isn't it?

- I like this photo. You can see the xx flying high above the mountains. Its wings are really huge – about two metres, I think. It's looking down at the ground. It's looking for food, I guess!
- This photo of a xx is amazing, I think – because it looks so human! It's holding a leaf in its hand and eating it. I know they're much bigger and stronger than humans, but it doesn't look frightening at all. It looks very gentle, with kind eyes.
- This is an interesting photo of a xx. Its body is yellow and black, and it's on a flower. They work hard and I think they're amazing.

6B Grammar

Past simple (affirmative): regular

Exercise 1 page 65

- enjoyed
- arrived
- travelled
- explored
- photographed
- wanted
- walked
- stopped
- waited
- stayed
- watched
- returned

Exercise 2 page 65

- studied
- stopped
- started
- watched
- sailed
- invented
- married
- crossed

Exercise 3 page 65

- This morning, I listened to music.
- Last weekend, I played basketball.
- Ten years ago, we lived there.
- Yesterday morning, she arrived early.
- Last month, it rained every day.
- Last summer, I travelled alone.

Exercise 5 page 65

- I started school **six years ago**.
- We **trained** for six months for this competition.
- I **chatted** to my cousins in Italy last night.
- We **planned** our holiday this morning.
- I watched a great DVD **yesterday afternoon**.
- My parents both **studied** maths.
- My uncle moved to Canada **last summer**.
- The bus **stopped** in front of the town hall.

6C Listening

Missing sounds

Exercise 1 page 66

- feed
- climb
- Watch
- Look
- run
- hold
- leave

Exercise 2 page 66

- moved
- liked
- studied
- watched

Exercise 3 2.03 page 66

- Past
- Don't know
- Past
- Present
- Don't know
- Past

Transcript

- I phoned an old friend.
- We watched TV.
- Harry jumped into the river.
- I usually walk to school on Fridays.
- Sam and Mary cooked dinner.
- The bus slowed down and stopped.

Exercise 4 2.04 page 66

- D
- B
- C
- E

The extra sentence is A.

Transcript

- My friend Barry and I were in the countryside with our cameras. We like watching birds and taking photos of them. We were at the side of a river, eating a picnic. And we watched a huge bird fly down to the water. It was an eagle! We were amazed. We were so lucky! But do you know what wasn't so lucky? We were too surprised to remember our cameras!
- I was in the kitchen with my sister. Mum carried the shopping bags in and my sister and I helped Mum put the food away. My sister opened a bag of fruit and shouted, 'Help! Spider! Spider!' On the bananas, there was a huge, black spider and we were terrified. Mum closed the bag and called the vet. When the vet arrived, he explained that it was a very dangerous spider.
- My friends and I visited the zoo last weekend. It was great fun. We walked around in the sun and looked at all the wild animals. But the funniest bit was at the monkey house. My friend Simon likes wearing caps, and a small monkey noticed Simon's red cap. It reached a hand through the cage, quickly taking it, and then it climbed up a tree with the cap on its head! Simon needs to buy a new cap now ...
- My family and I were in the north of Scotland last summer. We stayed with our cousins for two weeks on an island in the North Sea. It's cold there, but beautiful. On our last day we travelled by boat back to the airport. Suddenly, someone shouted, 'I can see whales!' We all watched as three whales moved slowly past us in the water. It was a wonderful thing to see.

Exercise 5 page 66

- surprised
- carried
- closed, called
- last
- funniest, at
- Scotland, last
- last, travelled, boat, airport

6D Grammar

Past simple: *be* and *can*

Exercise 1 page 67

- wasn't
- were
- weren't, Were
- Were, was
- was
- was

Exercise 2 page 67

- Nola was in London on Wednesday.
- Freddy and Nola weren't in Newcastle on Tuesday.
- Freddy was in Plymouth on Saturday and Sunday.
- Nola wasn't in London on Monday.
- Freddy and Nola were in Liverpool on Friday.

Exercise 3 page 67

- Where were you at ten o'clock yesterday morning?
(students' own answers)
- Where were you at three o'clock yesterday afternoon?
(students' own answers)
- Where were you at seven o'clock on Friday evening?
(students' own answers)
- Where were you at eleven o'clock Saturday night?
(students' own answers)

Exercise 4 page 67

- Could Sarah swim when she was four? Yes, she could.
- Could Mike read when he was three? Yes, he could.
- Could Sarah read when she was four? No, she couldn't.

5 Could Mike and Sarah ride a bike when they were six?
Yes, they could.

Exercise 5 page 67

1 weren't 2 couldn't 3 were 4 couldn't 5 Were
6 couldn't 7 Were 8 were 9 was 10 could

6E Word Skills

Prepositions of movement and place

Exercise 1 page 68

a round b through c to

Exercise 2 page 68

2 down – up 3 into – out of 4 off – onto
5 over – under

Exercise 3 page 68

1 b 2 b 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 a 7 c 8 a 9 a 10 c
11 b 12 b

6F Reading

Stranger than fiction?

Exercise 1 page 69

1 explorer, b 2 fisherman, f 3 journalist, h 4 pilot, g
5 politician, d 6 sailor, a 7 scientist, e 8 soldier, c

Exercise 2 page 69

Mrs Ultrup's

Exercise 3 page 69

1 b 2 c 3 b 4 a

6G Speaking

Photo description

Exercise 1 page 70

1 beach 2 cloud 3 grass 4 flower 5 ground
6 moon 7 mountains 8 sand 9 sky 10 sea
11 snow 12 stars 13 sunrise 14 sunset 15 tree
16 water

Photo A: grass, ground, trees

Photo B: beach, sand, sky, sea, trees, water

Exercise 2 2.05 page 70

Student 1 uses **trees**. Student 2 uses **sea, sky, clouds** and **water**.

Transcript

Student 1 In the centre, there's a bear. It's standing next to a tent. And there's a man in the tent. The bear is facing the man and the man is looking at the bear. There are some trees in the background, so they're probably in a forest. The man is probably frightened, but you can't really see that in his face. The bear walked up to the tent. It probably wanted food, or something like that.

Student 2 This photo shows two people – a man and a woman – in the sea near a tropical island. They're probably on holiday. They look happy and relaxed. The sky is completely clear – there aren't any clouds – and it's probably really warm. At the top of the photo are two dolphins. They're jumping out of the water. But the man and the woman can't see them, because they're facing the camera.

Exercise 3 2.05 page 70

1 student 2 both 3 both

Transcript

See exercise 2.

Exercise 4 page 70

Photo A: 1 In 2 on 3 facing 4 standing
5 background **Photo B:** 1 foreground 2 In 3 top
4 standing 5 aren't

Exercise 5 page 70

1 a lion 2 a safari Jeep 3 It's lying. 4 They're sitting.
5 No, it isn't. 6 grass

6H Writing

A postcard

Exercise 1 page 71

1 3 4 5 6 7 12

Students should circle 'abseiling'.

Exercise 2 page 71

1 're staying, 're kayaking, 're going 2 arrived, was,
trekked, climbed, abseiled, was, explored, cycled, were

Exercise 3 page 71

1 time 2 day 3 weather 4 days 5 here
6 Thinking 7 hello 8 love 9 soon

Review Unit 6

Exercise 1 page 72

1 butterfly 2 snake 3 elephant 4 eagle 5 shark
6 frog

Exercise 2 page 72

1 mouth 2 wings 3 ears 4 eyes 5 legs

Exercise 3 page 72

1 ago 2 last 3 yesterday 4 ago 5 last

Exercise 4 page 72

1 journalist 2 explorer 3 politician 4 sailor 5 scientist

Exercise 5 page 72

1 sky 2 mountains 3 beach 4 stars 5 tree 6 sunset

Exercise 6 page 72

1 D 2 C 3 E 4 B 5 F 6 A

Exercise 7 page 72

1 c 2 a 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 a

Exercise 8 page 73

1 decided 2 started 3 carried 4 walked 5 chatted
6 finished 7 arrived 8 described

Exercise 9 page 73

1 were 2 was 3 Could 4 could 5 couldn't 6 was
7 were 8 was

Exercise 10 page 73

1 Last 2 were 3 weren't 4 towards 5 didn't /
couldn't 6 away 7 could 8 was 9 into 10 to

Unit 7 Digital world

7A Vocabulary

Computing

Exercise 1 page 74

laptop, computer, tablet, monitor

1 headphones 2 keyboard 3 printer 4 webcam

5 mouse 6 speakers 7 charger 8 router

Exercise 2 page 74

1 computer 2 monitor 3 laptop 4 tablet

Exercise 3 page 74

- A They are scanning an important document.
- B He is uploading some photos.
- C She is entering her contact details.
- D They are downloading a song from the internet.
- E She is posting a comment on Facebook.
- F She is deleting photos from her tablet.

Exercise 4 2.06 page 74

1 D 2 B 3 A 4 F 5 E

The extra sentence is C.

Transcript

1 Boy Look, this is the one.

Girl Is it?

B Yes. It's from his new album. You just need to click on the link.

G It costs nearly £10. That's too expensive!

B No, it's only 99p. £10 is for the whole album.

G Oh, OK. That's fine then. I'll click on the link.

2 Girl What are you doing?

Boy I'm sharing these pictures from the weekend.

G What pictures?

B Oh, just a few pictures from the party. I'm putting them onto my website.

G OK.

B But it's taking a long time. The Wi-Fi connection isn't very good.

G Hey! That's a photo of me!

B Don't worry. I'm not sharing that one!

G Oh. Why not?

3 Boy This is no good. Look – you can't see the date at the top.

Girl Oh, OK. Let's try again.

B Hold on. I'll move it up a little bit.

G Why are we doing this anyway?

B I need to email it to the Chinese Embassy. It's part of my visa application.

G Oh, yes.

4 Girl I don't want that one. Or that one.

Boy Hey! What are you doing?

G Don't worry. They're my pictures, not yours.

B But why are you doing that? Is the memory full on your tablet?

G No, it isn't. But I don't want these ones.

B The ones with Amy in them?

G That's right.

B Oh, I see!

5 Boy What are you typing?

Girl I'm not saying.

B Oh please. Can I see?

G Oh, OK.

B Whose page are you looking at?

G My aunt's. She shared some new photos.

B 'I love your new hairstyle. You look like a movie star.'
That's nice.

G Yes. It isn't true – but it's nice!

Exercise 5 2.06 page 74

1 click 2 Wi-Fi 3 email 4 memory 5 page

Transcript

See exercise 4.

7B Grammar

Past simple (affirmative): irregular

Exercise 1 page 75

1 became 2 was 3 built 4 could 5 went 6 read
7 were 8 began 9 broke 10 made

Exercise 2 page 75

1 I took a lot of photos yesterday.

2 ✓

3 We spoke to the teacher earlier.

4 ✓

5 You came home late last night.

6 My grandfather fought in World War 2.

Exercise 3 page 75

1 drew 2 fell 3 bought 4 thought 5 found
6 caught 7 dreamt / dreamed 8 saw

Exercise 4 page 75

1 We saw an interesting film last night.

2 I travelled around Japan last summer.

3 My brother brought home a cat yesterday.

4 I got a good grade last term.

5 My cousins arrived a few minutes ago.

6 The lesson finished an hour ago.

7 I cooked dinner yesterday evening.

8 My parents taught abroad ten years ago.

7C Listening

Listening to instructions

Exercise 1 page 76

1 C 2 E 3 F 4 H 5 I 6 A 7 B 8 D 9 G

Exercise 2 page 76

1 to start off with 2 first (of all) 3 secondly 4 thirdly
5 now 6 next 7 then 8 finally 9 after that

Exercise 3 2.07 page 76

Dialogue 1: a first

Dialogue 2: a to start off with b next c after that

d finally

Dialogue 3: a first of all b next c now

Transcript

1 Girl Dan, can you help me?

Boy Sure, what's the problem?

G I can't log on to my Amazon account.

B OK, first enter your username and password.

G Yes, OK. ... There. There. Look. I can't log on. There's an error message. My password or my username is wrong.

B Well, if your password is right, your username is wrong.

G My username is the same as my email: blueeyes@fgnet.com

- B Ah, I see the problem. You've put 'blueeye@fgnet.com', not 'blueeyes'. Type it again.
- G Oh, yes, you're right. Silly me. That's better. Thanks!
- 2 Boy** I hate this laptop!
- Girl** Why? What's wrong?
- B** It crashes all the time and I lose my work.
- G** Have you got a back-up of your work? You should make one.
- B** No, how do I do that?
- G** Save all your documents to a DVD or to an external hard drive.
- B** I haven't got any DVDs, or an external hard drive.
- G** I've got a spare DVD here. You can use it, if you like.
- B** OK. Thanks. What do I do?
- G** It's really easy. To start off with, put the disk into the computer. Next, double-click on the disk to open it.
- B** OK. It's open.
- G** After that, drag your folder of work to the disk.
- B** There. It says copying 57 files' ... There. Finished.
- G** Good. Finally eject the disk.
- B** Brilliant. Thanks.
- 3 Girl** Tom, this website is taking ages to load. It's so slow.
- Boy** Are you using a Wi-Fi network?
- G** Yes, I am.
- B** Where is the router?
- G** In the living room.
- B** Well, first of all go into the living room. The Wi-Fi signal is stronger there.
- G** OK ... mmm, it isn't better. It's still very slow.
- B** OK, next disconnect the router from the power source.
- G** OK. Now what?
- B** Now connect it again.
- G** OK ... it's just the same. Very slow.
- B** Is someone else in the house online?
- G** My little brother is playing computer games with his friends in his bedroom. And I think my sister is uploading videos onto YouTube.
- B** Ah, that's probably the problem. Wait until they finish.

Exercise 4 2.07 page 76

1 a 2 c 3 a 4 a 5 c 6 a

Transcript

See exercise 3.

7D Grammar

Past simple (negative and interrogative)

Exercise 1 page 77

- We didn't go to the music festival.
- Jason didn't listen to music last night.
- The dog didn't eat its food.
- Henry didn't tidy his bedroom at the weekend.
- I didn't want to go to school on Friday.
- George didn't forget to do his homework.

Exercise 2 page 77

- didn't play
- didn't surf
- didn't have
- didn't do
- didn't study
- didn't snow
- didn't send
- didn't see

Exercise 3 page 77

- I phoned my friend. / I didn't phone my friend.
- I bought a magazine. / I didn't buy a magazine.
- I read a newspaper. / I didn't read a newspaper.
- I helped with the housework. / I didn't help with the housework.
- I took a photo. / I didn't take a photo.

Exercise 4 page 77

- Where did you have lunch yesterday?
- What time did you get to school on Monday?
- What did you have for breakfast this morning?
- Who did you sit next to in your last English lesson?
- How much water did you drink yesterday?
- Did you watch television last night?
- How did you get to school this morning?

Exercise 6 page 77

- Did Dan break his leg? Yes, he did.
- Did Millie find her phone? No, she didn't.
- Did Jess and Oliver watch a DVD? Yes, they did.
- Did Beth and Jamie help in the kitchen? No, they didn't.
- Did William buy any new clothes? No, he didn't.

7E Word Skills

Introduction to phrasal verbs

Exercise 2 page 78

- up
- down
- off/on
- on/off
- in
- in
- down
- down
- off
- on
- up
- in

Exercise 3 page 78

- break down
- log off
- log on

Exercise 4 page 78

- turn off/on
- turn on/off
- scan
- back up
- turn down/up
- turn up/down
- type in
- shut down

Exercise 5 page 78

- 's plugging in
- 's turning down
- 's scanning
- 's logging in
- 's shutting down
- 's turning off

Exercise 6 page 78

- backed up
- logged off
- typed in
- turned on
- broke down
- turned up

7F Reading

Say no to cyberbullying

Exercise 1 page 79

- internet
- account
- media
- campaign
- page
- story

Exercise 2 page 79

- d
- a
- b
- e
- c
- f

Exercise 3 page 79

- C
- A
- D
- E

The extra sentence is B.

7G Speaking

In a shop

Exercise 1 page 80

- sensor
- phones
- speakers
- life
- 4G
- port
- webcam
- card
- Fi
- screen
- port
- card slot

Exercise 2 page 80

- 1 g 2 h 3 m 4 e 5 d 6 j 7 b 8 a 9 l 10 k
11 f 12 i 13 c

Exercise 3 2.08 page 80

- 1 33p 2 £1.56 3 £127 4 41p 5 £250 6 £9.99
7 £67.38 8 £15.50

Transcript

- 1 thirty-three pence
2 one pound fifty-six
3 a hundred and twenty-seven pounds
4 forty-one p
5 two hundred and fifty pounds
6 nine ninety-nine
7 sixty seven pounds and thirty-eight pence
8 fifteen pounds fifty

Exercise 4 page 80 **1** How can I help you?

- 2 How much is it?
3 Would you like anything else?
4 Can I pay by debit card?
5 Enter your PIN, please.
6 Would you like a bag?

Exercise 5 2.09 page 80

Gadget (Spiral 5) tablet

Features 1 built-in 4G, 2 excellent battery life

What else does he buy? a case

Total price £200

Payment method debit card

Transcript

Shop assistant Can I help you?

Boy Yes, I'm looking for a tablet.

SA Tablets are over here.

B This one is nice. How much is it?

SA £250.

B That's quite a lot. Have you got anything cheaper?

SA Yes, the Spiral 4 is £150 and the Spiral 5 is £175.

B Has the Spiral 4 got built-in 4G?

SA No, it hasn't. But the Spiral 5 has. And it's got excellent battery life too.

B OK, I'd like the Spiral 5, please.

SA Could you come over to the till, then, please? ... That's £175.

B Oh, can I have a case for it, please?

SA Of course. These black cases are £25 or we've also got coloured cases for £30.

B The black one is fine.

SA That's £200 in total, please.

B Can I pay by debit card?

SA Yes, of course. Please enter your PIN. ... Thank you.

Here's your receipt.

B Thanks very much. Goodbye.

SA Thank you. Goodbye.

Exercise 6 page 80

- 1 Can you recommend a few smartphones?
2 What features does the Cybernet 2000 have?
3 How much are the phones?
4 Can I pay by credit card?

Exercise 7 page 80

(Possible answers)

- 1 Well, there are three popular phones, the Ultra 48, the Cybernet 2000 and the Touch Plus 3.
2 It has a touch-screen, built-in 4G and headphones.

3 The Ultra 48 is £120, the Cybernet 2000 is £99 and the Touch Plus 3 is £75.

4 No, I'm sorry. You have to pay in cash or by debit card.

7H Writing**A narrative****Exercise 1** page 81

- a few b day c some d last e next f moments g at h ago i end

Exercise 2 page 81

a few months ago, one day, at that moment, a few moments later, the next day

Exercise 4 page 81

- 1 hard 2 safely 3 Amazingly 4 politely
5 Unfortunately

Exercise 5 page 81

- 1 'How long is the film?' I asked.
2 Lucy smiled. 'I don't know,' she replied
3 'Who are you?' she asked. 'And why are you here?'
4 'Help me!' he shouted. 'I can't swim!'
5 'Don't worry,' said Ben. 'The water isn't very deep.'

Review Unit 7**Exercise 1** page 82

- 1 keyboard 2 webcam 3 Headphones
4 memory stick 5 laptop

Exercise 2 page 82

- 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 a 5 b 6 c

Exercise 3 page 82

- 1 First of all 2 Then 3 Next 4 After that 5 Finally

Exercise 4 page 82

- 1 campaigns 2 story 3 account 4 page 5 forums
6 media

Exercise 5 page 82

- 1 How can I help you?
2 How much is it?
3 Would you like anything else?
4 How would you like to pay?
5 That comes to £27.50.
6 Here's your change and your receipt.

Exercise 6 page 82

- 1 life 2 webcam 3 slot 4 ports 5 card

Exercise 7 page 83

- 1 c 2 f 3 e 4 b 5 a 6 d

Exercise 8 page 83

- 1 saw 2 lived 3 brought 4 came 5 took
6 taught 7 had 8 went

Exercise 9 page 83

- 1 Did you have 2 did you do 3 did you go 4 Did
you drive 5 didn't go 6 didn't like 7 Did you buy
8 didn't have

Exercise 10 page 83

1 b 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 c 7 c 8 a 9 c 10 b

Exam Skills Trainer 4**Exercise 1** page 84

A count, maths, six B lunch, banana, fish C spelling, word, write D calendar, late, days E images, drawings, photos

Exercise 2 page 84

1 B 2 E 3 A 4 D

Exercise 3 page 84

A 5 B 7 C 6 D 1 E 8 F 4 G 3 H 2

Exercise 4 2.10 page 84

1 T 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 F 8 F

Transcript

Celeste Hi, Tony. Did you have a good weekend?

Tony Yes, I did. I went to the zoo on Sunday.

C Did you? Who with?

T My mum and dad, and my brother. My sister couldn't come because she had to study.

C Oh. Did you have a good time at the zoo?

T Yes, it was great! I love animals, so I really enjoyed it.

C I love animals too, but I don't like zoos! I don't think we need them any more.

T Really? I don't agree with you. I think we can learn a lot from zoos. You can see animals from all over the world – lions, tigers, elephants – it's really interesting.

C But do you have to go to a zoo to see those animals? I look on the internet when I want to see an elephant.

T That's not the same as seeing them in real life.

C But a zoo isn't their real life. I prefer seeing animals in the wild.

T There aren't any elephants in the wild here in the UK.

C No, but you can watch programmes about elephants on TV.

T I love those programmes! I watch them every day.

C Me too. Did you see the one about sharks yesterday?

T Yes, I did. It was great, wasn't it?

C I really enjoyed it. And I learned a lot too.

Exercise 5 page 85

1 a SIM card 2 a keyboard 3 an email

Exercise 6 page 851 B 2 A 3 C 4 A 5 B 6 B 7 C 8 A 9 A
10 C**Exercise 7** page 85

- 1 Could I have a bag, please?
- 2 I'd like some wireless speakers, please.
- 3 Can I have a receipt, please?

Exercise 9 page 85

1 B 2 E 3 B 4 E

Unit 8 Be active!**8A Vocabulary****Sports and hobbies****Exercise 1** page 86

- 1 ice skating
- 2 climbing
- 3 gymnastics
- 4 surfing
- 5 swimming
- 6 volleyball
- 7 cycling
- 8 football

9 dancing 10 yoga 11 golf 12 skiing 13 ice hockey
14 table tennis 15 karate 16 basketball

Exercise 2 page 86

- 1 went
- 2 're playing
- 3 did
- 4 do
- 5 does
- 6 play
- 7 go
- 8 played

Exercise 3 page 86

- 1 basketball, football, golf, table tennis, volleyball, handball, tennis
- 2 ice hockey, ice skating, skiing, surfing, swimming
- 3 climbing, cycling, dancing, golf, gymnastics, skiing, surfing, swimming, yoga, roller skating, athletics, aerobics, skateboarding, ice skating
- 4 football, golf, skiing, surfing, skateboarding, tennis

Exercise 4 2.11 page 86

- 1 basketball and table tennis
- 2 gymnastics and yoga
- 3 climbing and karate
- 4 skiing and ice skating

Transcript

1 I really enjoy ball games. My favourite is basketball. I play that every weekend with a big group of friends in the park. And a few months ago, I started a new sport: table tennis. They taught us the rules in P.E. at school. I loved it! Now I play it at the sports centre every Wednesday.

2 I love sport, but I'm not keen on ball games. I prefer individual activities. Maybe I just don't enjoy competing. Anyway, it's important to be active. I do gymnastics twice a week at the local sports centre. And I do yoga at home, with my mum. We've got a DVD. We do it in the living room, in front of the TV!

3 I'm not a big fan of sport, but we have to do it at school. Fortunately, there's a big choice of different sports. Last year, I chose climbing. I'm good at that, because I sometimes go with my dad at weekends. This year, I'm doing karate. I don't really enjoy it, but I'm good at it – because I'm strong!

4 I was born in Canada. Maybe that's why I like winter sports. I'm really good at skiing, because we go every year. And when I was five, I started ice skating. I really want to go to the Winter Olympics one year – just to watch. I'm not good enough to take part!

Exercise 5 2.11 page 86

1 a 2 b 3 f 4 c

The extra sentences are D and E.

Transcript

See exercise 4.

8B Grammar**going to****Exercise 1** page 87

- 2 'm going to watch
- 3 're going to visit
- 4 's going to study
- 5 is going to move
- 6 are going to do
- 7 're going to tidy
- 8 are going to have

Exercise 2 page 87

- 1 aren't going to play
- 2 isn't going to walk
- 3 'm not going to have
- 4 's going to go
- 5 'm going to watch
- 6 aren't going to go
- 7 'm not going to finish
- 8 'm going to write
- 9 aren't going to buy

Exercise 3 page 87

- 1 this
- 2 next
- 3 in
- 4 week
- 5 afternoon
- 6 day
- 7 weeks
- 8 tomorrow

Exercise 4 page 87

- 2 Is Ava going to visit friends? Yes, she is.
- 3 Is Leo going to play tennis? No, he isn't.
- 4 Are Lily and Rory going to watch a DVD? Yes, they are.
- 5 Is Rory going to visit friends? Yes, he is.
- 6 Are Ava and Leo going to do yoga? No, they aren't.
- 7 Is Lily going to go shopping? No, she isn't.

8C Listening

Prediction

Exercise 1 page 88

- 1 old
- 2 book
- 3 case
- 4 dishwasher
- 5 hair
- 6 bed
- 7 brother
- 8 message
- 9 campaign

Exercise 2 2.12 page 88

- 1 shop
- 2 come
- 3 home
- 4 hungry
- 5 maths
- 6 bill
- 7 cinema

Transcript

- 1 My mum works in a clothes xx.
- 2 I'm having a party on Friday. I hope you can xx.
- 3 Shall we go to a restaurant or eat at xx?
- 4 Liam ate an enormous pizza, but he was still xx.
- 5 I can't do this calculation. I'm very bad at xx.
- 6 We'd like to pay. Could we please have the xx?
- 7 Let's go and see the new James Bond film at the xx.

Exercise 4 2.13 page 88

Transcript

- 1 I'm not going out because I've got a bad ...
- 2 He's wearing jeans and a baggy ...
- 3 Mum went to the supermarket and ...
- 4 We're going to France to ...
- 5 I want to make a cake. Have we ...

Exercise 5 2.14 page 88

The fastest climb to the top of Mont Blanc.

Transcript

Ueli Steck is a free solo climber. He climbs mountains on his own, and without ropes! Not only that, Ueli also climbs very fast. In fact, he is the fastest climber in the world. On 28 December 2008, Ueli, who is from Switzerland, decided to try and set a new world record. He planned to climb the Grandes Jorasses face of Mont Blanc in France, in less than three hours. The 1,220 metre climb usually takes three or four days! Mont Blanc is the highest mountain in Europe, and the Grandes Jorasses face is one of the most difficult routes to the top. He trained a lot before the climb and he also lost eight kilogrammes, so that he was much lighter. The amazing thing is that he didn't use ropes. So a fall meant certain death. But for Ueli, there was no fear! 'I was too busy with my goal of reaching the top,' he explained. Another danger was the weather. It is very dangerous if the weather changes and it suddenly becomes windy and rainy. But luckily, the weather stayed fine. After climbing for just 2 hours and 21 minutes, Steck arrived at the top. That's an average of nine metres per minute! The story appeared in newspapers and on the TV all around the world. Ueli Steck is now probably the most famous free solo climber in the world!

Exercise 6 2.14 page 88

- 1 b
- 2 b
- 3 b
- 4 a
- 5 c

Transcript

See exercise 5.

8D Grammar

will

Exercise 1 page 89

- 2 will be
- 3 will get
- 4 won't be
- 5 will rise
- 6 'll see
- 7 won't leave
- 8 will cost

Exercise 2 page 89

- 2 Will you go to university in another country? Yes, I will./No, I won't.
- 3 Will the World Cup take place next year? Yes, it will./No, it won't.
- 4 Will you leave home before you are 20? Yes, I will./No, I won't.
- 5 Will you be rich and famous? Yes, I will./No, I won't.
- 6 Will it be warm and sunny tomorrow? Yes, it will./No, it won't.
- 7 Will you and your family go abroad next summer? Yes, we will./No, we won't.
- 8 Will there be important exams at the end of the year? Yes, there will./No, there won't.

Exercise 3 page 89

- 1 It will be
- 2 Will Tamara go
- 3 will
- 4 I'll go
- 5 won't be
- 6 will you be
- 7 I'll watch
- 8 I'll see

8E Word Skills

Noun suffixes

Exercise 1 page 90

- 2 sadness
- 3 dark
- 4 advertisement
- 5 discuss
- 6 happiness
- 7 permit
- 8 treatment
- 9 argue
- 10 homesickness
- 11 explain
- 12 organisation
- 13 arrange
- 14 rudeness

Exercise 2 page 90

- 1 advertisement
- 2 rudeness
- 3 argument
- 4 permission
- 5 discussion, happiness
- 6 Homesickness
- 7 treatment
- 8 explanation

Exercise 3 page 90

- 1 suggestions
- 2 preparation
- 3 accommodation
- 4 Fitness
- 5 information
- 6 description
- 7 achievement
- 8 donations

Exercise 4 page 90

(Possible answers)

- 1 weak: He is still weak after his illness; weakness: Crying isn't a sign of weakness.
- 2 translate: Can you help me translate this into English?; translation: He specialises in translations from English into Spanish.
- 3 high: She likes wearing high heels; height: She is the same height as her sister.
- 4 decide: You decide what you want to do; decision: He is bad at making decisions.

8F Reading

Against the odds

Exercise 1 page 91

- 2 Australian
- 3 Brazilian
- 4 British
- 5 Canadian
- 6 Chinese
- 7 French
- 8 German
- 9 Hungarian
- 10 Italian
- 11 Japanese
- 12 Polish
- 13 Russian
- 14 Slovak
- 15 Spanish
- 16 Swedish
- 17 Turkish

Exercise 2 page 91
1 E 2 D 3 B 4 B 5 D

Exercise 3 page 91
1 c 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 b 6 c

8G Speaking

Negotiating

Exercise 1 page 92
1 fancy 2 prefer 3 not 4 rather 5 would 6 good
7 instead
A 1, 3, 6 B 2, 4, 5, 7

Exercise 2 2.15 page 92

- 1 I'd rather not.
- 2 I think (hockey) would be better.
- 3 I don't really fancy doing that.
- 4 I'd prefer to (do athletics).
- 5 I don't think that's a good idea.
- 6 Do you fancy (doing judo) instead?

Transcript

Sam Hi, Kylie. It's Sam. Are you going to the activity camp next week?

Kylie Yes, I am. And I need to choose my activities.

S Me too. Why don't we choose the same ones?

K Great idea! Do you fancy playing water polo?

S I'd rather not. I'm not very good at swimming. I think hockey would be better.

K I don't really fancy doing that. I'd prefer to do athletics.

S OK. I like athletics too. What about our second activity? Would you like to try climbing?

K I don't think that's a good idea. I'm scared of heights! Do you fancy doing judo instead?

S OK. Good idea!

Exercise 3 page 92

They choose athletics and judo.

They also mention water polo, hockey and climbing.

Exercise 4 2.16 page 92

- 1 volleyball and tennis
- 2 table tennis, athletics and hockey
- 3 aerobics and badminton
- 4 karate, dancing and football

Transcript

1 Lily Hello, Jack.

Jack Hi, Lily.

L Are you choosing your activities for the camp next week?

J Yes, I am. Hey, let's choose the same activities. Then we can be together.

L That's a good idea. Shall we play table tennis?

J I don't really fancy doing that. I play it all the time at home. I'd rather choose something else. What about athletics?

L I'd rather not. Athletics is too tiring!

J Do you think so? OK, then. What do you suggest?

L Why don't we play volleyball? That's really good fun.

J You're right. Volleyball is a good choice. I'm happy with that.

L And what about hockey?

J I don't think that's a very good idea. I don't really enjoy hockey. I think tennis would be better.

L OK, that's fine with me.

2 Toby Hey, Maya. Let's choose our activities for the camp.

Maya Good idea, Toby. I really want to do aerobics.

T Me too.

M Really?

T Yes.

M Are you sure?

T Yes! Why are you so surprised?

M Oh, no reason. Now, we need to find a second activity. Do you fancy doing karate?

T I'd rather not. I did karate last year and I didn't really enjoy it. What about dancing?

M Is that on the list?

T Yes, it is. Look.

M Oh, yes. But I don't really fancy doing that. It's too similar to aerobics.

T I suppose so.

M Let's choose a sport. What about football?

T I don't think that's a very good idea. I'd prefer to play badminton.

M OK. I like badminton. Let's do that.

T Great!

Exercise 5 page 92

- 2 Is that right?
- 3 Do you think so?
- 4 I suppose so.
- 5 I see what you mean.

Exercise 6 2.16 page 92

- 3, 1, 4

Transcript

See exercise 4.

Exercise 7 page 92

- 1 too young
- 2 too tired
- 3 too expensive
- 4 too untidy
- 5 too big
- 6 too dark

8H Writing

An informal letter

Exercise 1 page 93

- 1 Sorry, it's ages since I wrote to you.
- 2 Sorry I didn't reply sooner.
- 3 Apologies for not replying sooner.
- 4 Listen, did I tell you that ... / about ... ?
- 5 Guess what!
- 6 You'll never guess what (happened ...)
- 7 Good news! / Bad news!
- 8 By the way, did you know that ... ?
- 9 Oh, and another thing, ...
- 10 How about (+ -ing form)?
- 11 Maybe you / we could ...
- 12 Why don't you / we ... ?
- 13 It would be great if you could ...
- 14 If you like, we / you could ...

Exercise 2 page 93

Extra information 3 Date 2 Writer's address 1

Review Unit 8

Exercise 1 page 94

- 1 aerobics
- 2 basketball
- 3 golf
- 4 karate
- 5 skiing
- 6 volleyball
- 7 yoga
- 8 skateboarding

Exercise 2 page 94

- 1 this afternoon
- 2 tonight
- 3 tomorrow
- 4 the day after tomorrow
- 5 next weekend
- 6 next year

Exercise 3 page 94

- 1 Turkish
- 2 Canadian
- 3 Chinese
- 4 Swedish
- 5 Brazilian
- 6 French

Exercise 4 page 94

- 1 relay
- 2 shot put
- 3 marathon
- 4 pole vault
- 5 100 metres
- 6 long jump

Exercise 5 page 94

1 rather 2 suppose 3 prefer 4 better 5 right 6 fancy

Exercise 6 page 94

1 happiness 2 advertisements 3 description
4 organisation 5 discussion 6 information
7 accommodation

Exercise 7 page 95

1 are you going to watch 2 'm not going to be
3 are you going to see 4 are you going to stay
5 're going to take 6 aren't going to sleep
7 are you going to get 8 's going to drive

Exercise 8 page 95

1 'll pass 2 won't come 3 will (you) see 4 'll like
5 won't win 6 will (you) be 7 will snow 8 won't get

Exercise 9 page 95

1 German 2 rudeness 3 British 4 arguments
5 treatment 6 homesickness 7 fitness 8 permission
9 arrangements 10 achievements

Unit 9 Home sweet home!

9A Vocabulary

My home

Exercise 1 page 96

1 loft 2 bedroom 3 bathroom 4 study 5 toilet
6 garage 7 kitchen 8 dining room 9 living room
10 utility room 11 hall 12 basement 13 garden

Exercise 2 page 96

1 f 2 d 3 s 4 i 5 l 6 w 7 c 8 t 9 r 10 n
11 x 12 j 13 q 14 u 15 k 16 y 17 b 18 a
19 p 20 h 21 m 22 v 23 z 24 g 25 e 26 o

Exercise 3 2.17 page 96

1 kitchen 2 utility room 3 dining room
4 living room 5 bathroom 6 bedroom

Transcript

Agent So, let's start here. And as you can see, everything in this room is quite new.

Customer Yes. The cooker looks really modern. Is it electric?

A Yes, it is. Everything is electric, actually.

C You mean, like the fridge?

A Well, of course. But look. The blinds are electric too.

C That's great! Er ... is there a washing machine?

A Not in this room. But open this door, and ...

C Oh, that's really nice.

A It's not a big room, but it's got everything you need. There are a few cupboards, there's a washing machine ...

C That sink is enormous!

A Yes. It's perfect for washing clothes. Shall we see the other rooms now?

C Yes, please.

A So, this is the next room. It's got a table and chairs.

C The mirror on the wall is beautiful.

A Yes. It makes the room look larger.

C I can imagine having dinner in here with some friends.

A Yes, it's perfect, isn't it? And when you want to relax before or after dinner, you can bring your guests through to this other room ...

C Oh, yes. Very nice. The sofa looks very comfortable. Er ... the curtains are an unusual colour.

A Yes. You'll probably want to change those. Anyway, let's go upstairs. Follow me ...

C Oh, yes. I love this. Very modern. That light is very attractive.

A Yes. And the bath and the shower are nice too.

C Yes. Very nice. And what's through this door?

A Yes, it is. After you ...

C Oh, this is a good size. It's a big bed! And is there a wardrobe?

A Yes, there is. The wardrobe is behind the door.

C Oh, yes. I didn't see it.

A So, what do you think?

C I love it. When can I move in?

Exercise 4 2.17 page 96

1 cooker 2 blinds 3 sink 4 mirror 5 sofa
6 curtains 7 light

Transcript

See exercise 3.

9B Grammar

Present perfect (affirmative)

Exercise 1 page 97

1 has invited 2 's moved 3 has repaired 4 've finished
5 've tidied 6 've started 7 've emailed 8 's replied

Exercise 2 page 97

be was / were, been break broke, broken come came,
come do did, done eat ate, eaten forget forgot,
forgotten give gave, given see saw, seen speak spoke,
spoken take took, taken write wrote, written

Exercise 3 page 97

1 's broken 2 've forgotten 3 have come 4 've spoken
5 's eaten 6 've been 7 have taken 8 've written

Exercise 4 page 97

2 've just sent 3 has just stopped 4 've just given
5 has just told 6 've just met 7 has just made

Exercise 5 page 97

1 I've written about 20 emails today!
2 Our cousins have come to stay with us for the weekend.
3 The train has just arrived at the station.
4 We've seen that film five times.
5 My uncle has spent two weeks in hospital.

9C Listening

University accommodation

Exercise 1 page 98

2 want to 3 have to 4 lots of 5 going to 6 can you
7 don't know 8 are you 9 did you 10 do you
11 can I 12 there are

Exercise 2 2.18 page 98

1 a 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 a

Transcript

1 gonna

2 d'ya

3 didya

4 wanna

- 5 canya
6 dunno

Exercise 3 2.19 page 98

- 1 What do you do? 2 What kind of car have you got?
3 There are lots of cups in the cupboard. 4 Can I go out this evening? 5 Where are you going to go this evening? 6 I don't want to do lots of homework at the weekend. 7 Can you put your jacket in the wardrobe? 8 Are you going to have to get up early tomorrow? 9 Do you have to tidy your bedroom?

Transcript

- 1 What d'ya do?
2 What kinda car have you got?
3 There are lotsa cups in the cupboard.
4 Can I go out this evening?
5 Where are you gonna go this evening?
6 I don't wanna do lots of homework at the weekend.
7 Can you put your jacket in the wardrobe?
8 Are you gonna have to get up early tomorrow?
9 D'ya have to tidy your bedroom?

Exercise 4 2.20 page 98

- 1 October 2 a flat 3 further out 4 on her own
5 eleven o'clock

Transcript

- Agent** Good morning. How can I help you?
Student Good morning. I'm going to move to York in October and I'm looking for a flat.
A We've got lots of flats. Do you want to live in the town centre?
S I suppose the town centre is more expensive.
A Yes, it is.
S I'm looking for somewhere cheap. Can you show me some flats that are further out?
A Certainly. Do you want to share or are you looking for your own flat?
S I'd like my own flat.
A These two are very nice, and not very expensive. Would you like to see them?
S Yes, please.
A I can show you them tomorrow. Can you come to the office at ten?
S Eleven is better for me. Is that OK?
A Yes, of course. See you tomorrow.

Exercise 5 2.20 page 98

- 1 How can I help you? 2 I'm going to move to York.
3 We've got lots of flats. Do you want to live in the town centre? 4 Can you show me some flats that are further out? 5 Do you want to share or are you looking for your own flat? 6 Can you come to the office at ten?

Transcript

See exercise 4.

9D Grammar

Present perfect (negative and interrogative)

Exercise 1 page 99

- 1 We haven't had breakfast. 2 Jessica hasn't finished her homework. 3 Lily and Alfie haven't seen that film. 4 You haven't answered my email. 5 It hasn't stopped snowing. 6 I haven't done the shopping.

Exercise 2 page 99

- 2 I've already read it. 3 He's already emailed her.
4 They've already done it. 5 She's already phoned him.
6 I've already set it.

Exercise 3 page 99

- 3 Sophia hasn't bought a new mobile phone yet.
4 I haven't visited Italy yet.
5 You've already eaten your breakfast.
6 Mia and William have already arrived at school.
7 We haven't listened to the news yet.
8 I've already phoned my friend Sam.
9 He's already unloaded the dishwasher.

Exercise 4 page 99

- 2 Have Molly and Fred cleaned the bathroom yet? Yes, they have. 3 Have you changed the beds yet? No, I haven't. 4 Has Mum done the washing up yet? No, she hasn't. 5 Has David done the washing yet? Yes, he has. 6 Has Sarah done the ironing yet? Yes, she has. 7 Have Emily and Joe cooked dinner yet? No, they haven't.

9E Word Skills

do, make, have, take, bring

Exercise 1 page 100

- do 1 the cleaning 2 the hoovering 3 housework
4 nothing / something have 5 an argument
6 a conversation 7 a drink 8 a shower make 9 a bed
10 friends take 11 the bus 12 somebody's advice

Exercise 2 page 100

- 1 Have 2 Have 3 take 4 make 5 make 6 do
7 have 8 do 9 take 10 do 11 take

Exercise 3 page 100

- 1 breakfast 2 the exam, mistakes, your best 3 a photo
4 the shopping 5 dinner

Exercise 4 page 100

- 1 towards 2 away from

Exercise 5 page 100

- 1 take 2 bring 3 bring 4 take 5 Take 6 Bring

Exercise 6 page 100

- a breakfast b drink c shower d fight e fun
f accident g (good) holiday h headache i flu

9F Reading

In the middle of nowhere

Exercise 1 page 101

- 1 next-door neighbour 2 tropical island 3 sandy beaches 4 daily life 5 free time 6 basic supplies

Exercise 2 page 101

- c a storm

Exercise 3 page 101

- 1 C 2 F 3 D 4 A

The two extra sentences are B and E.

Exercise 4 page 101

- 1 He, the journalist
- 2 here, the village
- 3 they, communications in the village
- 4 Their, the houses

9G Speaking**Photo comparison****Exercise 1** page 102

- 1 bright 2 comfortable 3 cosy 4 dark 5 large
- 6 relaxing 7 small 8 tidy 9 uncomfortable 10 untidy

Exercise 2 page 102**A Comparing and contrasting:**

- 1 Both photos show ...
 - 2 In the first photo ..., but in the second photo ...
 - 3 The first photo shows ..., whereas the second photo shows ...
 - 4 You can see ... in both photos.
- B Speculating:**
- 5 I think ... probably ...
 - 6 I would say that ...
 - 7 It looks as if ...
 - 8 Perhaps he / she / it / they ...
 - 9 They look (+ adjective). He / She / It looks (+ adjective).

Exercise 3 2.21 page 102

- 1 Both photos show ... 2 In the first photo ..., but in the second photo ... 3 The first photo shows ..., whereas the second photo shows ... 5 I think ... probably ... 6 I would say that ... 7 It looks as if ... 8 Perhaps he/she/it/they ... 9 They look (+ adjective).

Transcript

Both photos show living rooms, but the rooms are quite different. Photo one shows an old-fashioned room, whereas the room in photo two is much more modern. The room in photo one is quite small and dark, but I think it's probably quite cosy. I can see two armchairs, a small table, a fireplace, a lamp and I think there's a cupboard in the background. The room in photo two is large, bright and very comfortable. I can see a sofa, chairs, a table, and pictures on the wall. In the first photo, there are four people, but in the second photo, there's only one. The people in photo one are drinking tea and chatting. They look quite old and their clothes are very old-fashioned. Perhaps they are all from the same family. In fact, I'd say that the older people in the armchairs are the parents of the others. The man in photo two is sitting on a sofa, I think, and looking at a tablet. It looks as if he is reading a book. I like the room in photo two more than the one in photo one. It looks much brighter and more relaxing.

9H Writing**A description****Exercise 1** page 103

- a 2 b 3 c 1 d 1 e 2

Exercise 2 page 103

- 2 We went to bed early because we were tired. / Because we were tired, we went to bed early.
- 3 It was a cold evening, so we stayed at home.

- 4 The cinema is expensive although tickets for children are cheaper.
- 5 The café closed because it was not very popular.

Exercise 3 page 103**(Possible answers)**

- 1 extremely expensive 2 fairly busy 3 really popular
- 4 pretty large 5 very noisy 6 very modern

Exercise 4 page 103

- Paragraph 1** Sentences 2 and 5 **Paragraph 2** Sentences 4 and 6 **Paragraph 3** Sentences 1 and 2

Review Unit 9**Exercise 1** page 104

- 1 c 2 b 3 c 4 d 5 d 6 a

Exercise 2 page 104

- 1 dining room 2 hall 3 basement 4 garage 5 loft
- 6 garden 7 utility room

Exercise 3 page 104

- 1 next-door 2 basic 3 sandy 4 tropical 5 daily
- 6 free

Exercise 4 page 104

- 1 d 2 b 3 f 4 a 5 e 6 c

Exercise 5 page 104

- 1 c 2 b 3 d 4 a 5 d 6 c 7 b 8 a

Exercise 6 page 105

- 1 've seen 2 has made 3 's been 4 has finished
- 5 've eaten 6 has taken 7 have come 8 've met

Exercise 7 page 105

- 1 Have I told 2 's bought 3 hasn't moved
- 4 's packed 5 Have you seen 6 haven't had 7 Have they finished 8 haven't painted

Exercise 8 page 105

- 1 just 2 yet 3 already 4 yet 5 already 6 just

Exercise 9 page 105

- 1 just 2 small 3 large 4 make 5 have
- 6 comfortable 7 do 8 take 9 already 10 yet

Exam Skills Trainer 5**Exercise 1** page 106

- 1 apprentice 2 switch 3 sheets 4 hammock

Exercise 2 page 106

- 1 C 2 D 3 A 4 D 5 B

Exercise 3 page 106

- a 8 b 3 c 6 e 2 e 7 f 4 g 1 h 5

Exercise 4 2.22 page 107

- 1 video monitors 2 4 3 climbing wall 4 American
- 5 baseball field 6 trees 7 2006 8 football

Transcript

There are some great houses out there for sports fans, and some of them spend a lot of money on their hobby.

Take, for example, a basketball fan in Summerlin, Nevada. The house has got an indoor basketball court and an area for people to watch matches behind a glass wall. If his guests prefer, they can follow the action on one of the video monitors installed all over the house. He recently sold the house for more than four million dollars.

The next house is in Ankara, Turkey. The climber who lives there built a climbing wall on the side of the house. He wanted it to be higher than anything in a gym and it had to look like natural rock. An American company built it in the end, so it was very expensive.

There's a house for sale in Castle Rock, Colorado where a famous baseball player once lived. When the player bought the land, there were plans to build 39 houses there. After he built his own house, he used the rest of the land for a full-size baseball field. It's surrounded by a fence with trees behind it. Finally, there's a house for sale in Updown, near London, which is perfect for sports fans who like more than one sport. The \$150 million home was the most expensive house in the world when builders finished it in 2006. It has a bowling alley, two squash courts, a full gym, stables with five horses and a football pitch.

Exercise 5 page 107

- 1 achievement 2 Scientists 3 uncomfortable
4 information 5 colder 6 further 7 dangerous
8 accommodation 9 solution 10 homesickness

Exercise 6 page 107

- 1 S 2 G 3 G 4 S

Exercise 8 page 107

(Possible answers)

- 1 It isn't in the city centre, but it's quiet and peaceful.
2 I'm not lonely because my friends often visit me.
3 It's a large flat, but it's on the tenth floor.
4 It's got a lot of windows, so the rooms are very bright.

Cumulative Review 1 (Units 1–3)

Exercise 1 page 108

- 1 dad 2 four 3 two 4 80 5 lives 6 there 7 Her
8 food

Exercise 2 2.23 page 108

- 1 F 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 F

Transcript

Ross Fatima, where are your parents from?

Fatima Well, my mum's German, and my dad's from India.

R Wow! Two completely different nationalities!

F That's right.

R Do you know your German family?

F Yes, I do. I've got an aunt and an uncle, and three cousins. They live in the south, near Munich.

R What about your family in India?

F Yes, I know them, too. I've got two aunts, an uncle and six cousins. Also, my grandmother is still alive. She's 80.

R Where do they live?

F They all live in Mumbai. My grandmother lives with one of my aunts.

R What is your family in India like?

F They're all very friendly. They love having visitors and there's a big party when we go to India to see them.

R What about your German family?

F They're friendly, too. But they're different from my family in India. In India, people spend most of their free time with their families. In Germany, people spend more time with friends than with family.

R So, which country do you prefer?

F Oh, I like both of them. But there is one thing that's better in India.

R Really? What's that?

F The food! My aunts are both very good cooks, and they cook fantastic dinners!

Exercise 4 page 108

- 1 D 2 G 3 B 4 E 5 A

Exercise 6 page 109

- 1 c 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 a 6 c 7 b 8 b 9 c 10 a

Cumulative Review 2 (Units 1–3)

Exercise 1 2.24 page 110

- 1 shoes 2 jumper 3 light 4 tie 5 shorts 6 work
7 bag 8 shoes 9 white 10 trainers

Transcript

Presenter Now, it's always nice to receive an invitation to a wedding, but it's often difficult to know what to wear. Our fashion expert, Emily Pepperday, is here to give us some advice. Emily, let's start with winter weddings. What should we wear?

Guest Well, at a winter wedding you have to look good, but you don't want to be cold. Women should wear a warm dress – deep colours like red, blue or green are best. If you want to wear boots, you should take some shoes with you and change before the ceremony. Men should wear a dark suit, that's a jacket and trousers of the same colour. They can wear a jumper under the jacket, if necessary.

P I suppose there's the opposite problem at summer weddings, Emily?

G That's right. In the summer, you want to look good without being too hot. Women can wear long or short dresses – it really doesn't matter. But this time they should wear light colours. Men should wear a shirt and jacket, but they don't have to wear a tie.

P That makes sense. Now, Emily, some wedding invitations say our clothes should be 'casual'. Does that mean we can wear what we want?

G Not really, no. You don't have to wear a long dress or a suit, for example, but you shouldn't wear jeans or shorts, either. You should wear something you aren't embarrassed to wear to work. Women can wear a sundress with some nice shoes, and men are OK with smart trousers and a jacket.

P Right. And what should we wear if the invitation specifies 'formal' clothes?

G Formal for women usually means a long dress with high-heeled shoes and a nice bag. Men should wear a black suit and tie with clean black shoes. It can be quite expensive to buy clothes for a formal wedding!

P One last question, Emily. Apart from jeans or shorts, is there anything that we should never wear to a wedding?

G Yes. Women should never wear white to a wedding – that's for the woman who is getting married. And neither men nor women should wear trainers.

P Thanks for that, Emily.

G My pleasure.

Exercise 3 page 110

- 1 D 2 A 3 F 4 G 5 C

Exercise 5 page 111

- 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 a 7 c 8 c 9 c 10 b

Cumulative Review 3 (Units 1–5)

Exercise 2 2.25 page 112

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b

Transcript

1 Why not visit Brighton this weekend? At only 75 km from London, it's the perfect place to go if you're tired of the crowds in the capital. Head for the beach and walk along the sea front, stopping for coffee at one of the many cafés. Explore the centre, visiting the old markets and shops that are typical of the city. Brighton has got something for everyone, so make it your next stop for a weekend away.

2 **Operator** National Rail Enquiries. Can I help you?

Customer Um, hello. Yes, I'd like to know the times of the trains to Cardiff, please.

G Which station are you travelling from?

C Bristol. Bristol Parkway.

G Bristol Parkway. And, when would you like to travel?

C Tomorrow morning. At about 11 o'clock.

G 11 a.m. OK, there's a train that leaves Bristol Parkway at 10.41 and arrives in Cardiff at 11.23. Is that any good?

C Yes, that's perfect. Thanks a lot.

3 **Ruth** Adam, you know Edinburgh, don't you?

Adam Yes, I do. My uncle lives there. Why?

R I want to go there next weekend with my sister. What should we see there?

A Well, you have to see the castle, which is on the hill. From there, you can walk down the Royal Mile, the street that takes you to the Old Town. Apart from that, there's a museum, and there are a lot of parks and gardens. But it's the castle that's the most interesting.

R Thanks.

4 **Guide** Right, if I can have your attention, please. We're standing at the Mayflower Steps, one of the most important places in the history of the city of Plymouth. Now, the Mayflower was the ship that carried the first British people to America to start a new life. This happened in the year 1620 and it was here, at the Mayflower Steps, that the group got on the ship ready to leave England for America. Now, if you look over here, you'll see ...

Exercise 4 page 112

1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 F

Exercise 5 page 113

1 a 2 c 3 b 4 b 5 b 6 c 7 c 8 a 9 a 10 a

Cumulative Review 4 (Units 1–7)

Exercise 1 2.26 page 114

1 F 2 C 3 G 4 B 5 E 6 A

Transcript

Speaker 1 I find my phone most useful when I'm on the underground in the morning. It takes me about 40 minutes to get to school. The best way to travel is sitting down with my headphones on. I just put on my favourite band, turn up the volume and close my eyes until I have to get off the train.

Speaker 2 I use my phone a lot for meeting friends. We've got a group together on WhatsApp, so when we want to meet, we just post a place and time and everyone knows what to do. It means that we don't have to make a lot of phone calls every time we want to see each other.

Speaker 3 My phone's really old – I'm hoping to get a new one for my next birthday. Anyway, I can't really do much with it except use it for talking to people. I try not to use it too much, because it can get expensive. The person I call most is my best friend, who lives on the other side of town.

Speaker 4 I've got a job delivering meals in my car for a Chinese restaurant. I don't know my town that well, but my phone takes me to all the houses. I just type in the address and it tells me which way to go. Thanks to my phone, I hardly ever get lost.

Speaker 5 I have to travel a lot in my job, which makes it difficult when people email me. I'm not often at my desk, so I can't read what they say on my computer. Now I've got a smartphone, this isn't a problem. I can read everything when I get to my hotel and answer their questions.

Speaker 6 I often use my phone when I'm bored. There are some people I follow on YouTube who really make me laugh. They've got webcams in their rooms, and they do lots of things in front of the screen: acting, telling jokes, all kinds of things. I think they're really funny.

Exercise 3 page 114

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 b

Exercise 4 page 115

1 a 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 c 6 a 7 c 8 b 9 a 10 c

Cumulative Review 5 (Units 1–9)

Exercise 1 2.27 page 116

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 d 5 c

Transcript

Presenter Buckingham Palace is opening its doors to tourists again tomorrow. We've invited Finley Sparks to the show to tell us about the tour. Finley, how much of the palace do people actually see?

Guest Well, Buckingham Palace is very large – there are 775 rooms including the nineteen State Rooms and 78 bathrooms. On the tour, you can see all of the State Rooms. These are rooms where the king or queen meets important visitors to the palace. **P** Right. Can you tell us what the State Rooms are like, Finley?

G Oh, they're full of lovely furniture, beautiful carpets and impressive works of art. There are paintings by famous artists such as Rubens and Rembrandt. But the thing I like best is the Grand Staircase. The architect John Nash designed the staircase in the 1820s, and it really is spectacular. There are two sets of stairs that go from the ground floor to the first floor.

P So what kind of rooms are the State Rooms?

G There's the Music Room and there are three drawing rooms – these are like living rooms for special occasions. Then there's the Picture Gallery and the Ballroom. In the past, this is where the palace had dances, but today they often use it as a large dining room. And then, of course, there's the Throne Room.

P The Throne Room?

G Yes. This room has some special chairs, where kings and queens sit for official ceremonies and for photographs. Prince William and his new wife Kate Middleton sat in the Throne Room for the photograph of their wedding in 2011.

P Right, the Throne Room. Does the tour only include the State Rooms, Finley?

G No, you can also go outside to visit the gardens if you pay a bit more. There are hundreds of different trees and flowers and a very large lake. You can also see the tennis courts where King George VI played. And you can finish your visit with a cup of tea in the Garden Café.

P That sounds very pleasant. Finley Sparks, thank you for joining us.

G My pleasure.

Exercise 3 page 116

1 c 2 d 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 b

Exercise 4 page 117

1 b 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 c 8 a 9 c 10 b